

# Ido for All

Ido (pronounced "ee-doh") is a constructed language created with the goal of becoming a universal second language for speakers of different linguistic backgrounds as a language easier to learn than ethnic languages. Unlike English, which is a natural and frequently irregular language, Ido was specifically designed for grammatical, orthographic, and lexicographical regularity and to favor no one who might otherwise be advantaged in a situation due to native fluency in a widespread language. In this sense, Ido is classified as a consciously created international auxiliary language. At present, Ido is one of the three auxiliary languages with a large body of literature and a relatively large speaker base, along with Esperanto and Interlingua.

Ido is largely based on Esperanto and first appeared in 1907 as a result of a desire to reform perceived flaws in Esperanto that some of its supporters believed to be a hindrance in its propagation as an easy-to-learn second language. The name of the language traces its origin to the Esperanto/Ido word "ido", meaning "offspring", since the language was a "descendant" of Esperanto.

Ido uses the 26 Latin letters of the English alphabet, with no diacritics. It resembles the Romance languages in appearance and sometimes is mistaken for Italian or Spanish at first glance. Its vocabulary is based on those of the major European languages and therefore indirectly on Latin. A number of prefixes and suffixes alter the meaning of words and then give the possibility to create obvious neologisms. Ido is largely intelligible to those who have studied Esperanto, though there are certain differences in word formation, grammar and grammatical-function words that make it more than a simple reform project.

Books in and about Ido have been published in many countries but yet few people know about it. The purpose of this document is to show the great simplicity and practicality of this auxiliary language. Since Ido is much easier than any of the national languages spoken in Europe, much less time and effort is needed if two people both learn Ido than if either learns the other's mother

tongue.

If at the end of this course you feel that you have "fallen in love" with this awesome international language, then please talk about Ido to as many friends as you can and distribute this document widely.

# Ido for All

## English course for learning Ido

Niklas ApGawain

Including material by P. D. Hugon, J. L. Moore, L. de Beaufront

Revised by B.Y.T. et al. under the guidance of Stephen L. Rice

Revised by Jerry Muelver

Revised by G. Cappelluti

Revised by Kim Kaiser

Twelfth Edition

April 2024



Self-published 2024 by Kim Kaiser.

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License. See <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0/> for details.

*First edition 1975*

by Niklas ApGawain, including material from works by  
P. D. Hugon, J. L. Moore, L. de Beaufront, published by  
The International Language (Ido) Society of Great Britain.

*Second edition July 1999, "1.0"*

*Third edition August 1999, "1.1"*

*Fourth edition February 2000, "1.2"*

*Fifth edition May 2000, "1.3"*

*Sixth edition February 2005, "1.4"*

revised by B.Y.T., Steven L. Rice, et al.,  
with permission from author Niklas ApGawain,  
and giving permission for future revisions.

*Seventh edition November 2008, "1.5"*

*Eighth edition December 2008, "1.6"*

*Ninth edition February 2010, "1.7"*

*Tenth edition December 2010, "1.8"*

revised by Jerry Muelver  
CC BY-NC-SA 3.0  
Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-ShareAlike

*Eleventh edition January 2011*

revised by G. Cappelluti  
CC BY-NC-SA 3.0  
Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-ShareAlike

*Twelfth edition April 2024*

revised by Kim Kaiser, not only per the prior CC BY-NC-SA,  
but also with permission from author Niklas ApGawain.  
CC BY-NC-SA 3.0  
Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-ShareAlike

See the appendix *Edition History* for more information.

Kim Kaiser may be contacted at [KirothimPub@gmail.com](mailto:KirothimPub@gmail.com).

## **Contents**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Preface to the Twelfth Edition.....             | xii  |
| Preface to the Tenth Edition, "1.8".....        | xiii |
| Preface to the Sixth Edition, "1.4".....        | xiv  |
| Lesson 0 - Zeresma Leciono.....                 | 1    |
| The Alphabet.....                               | 1    |
| Consonants.....                                 | 1    |
| Vowels.....                                     | 2    |
| Diphthongs.....                                 | 3    |
| Syllables.....                                  | 3    |
| Accentuation (Stress).....                      | 4    |
| Pronunciation Exercise.....                     | 4    |
| The Names of the Letters.....                   | 5    |
| Tips on Learning Ido.....                       | 6    |
| Lesson 1 - Unesma Leciono.....                  | 8    |
| Nouns.....                                      | 8    |
| Articles.....                                   | 8    |
| <i>Is - esas</i> .....                          | 8    |
| Verbs - Present Tense.....                      | 10   |
| <i>And - ed/e</i> .....                         | 10   |
| Lesson 2 - Duesma Leciono.....                  | 14   |
| Adjectives.....                                 | 14   |
| Negative Verbs.....                             | 16   |
| Deriving Nouns from Adjectives.....             | 16   |
| Adjectives - Short Forms.....                   | 20   |
| Lesson 3 - Triesma Leciono.....                 | 21   |
| Questions.....                                  | 21   |
| Plurals.....                                    | 23   |
| The Definite Article <i>le</i> for Plurals..... | 23   |
| Colors.....                                     | 26   |
| Imperatives.....                                | 26   |
| Animals.....                                    | 28   |
| Lesson 4 - Quaresma Leciono.....                | 29   |
| Word-Building - Vortifado.....                  | 29   |
| Possession with <i>di</i> .....                 | 31   |
| Quantity with <i>de</i> .....                   | 32   |
| Foods - Manjaji.....                            | 34   |
| Lesson 5 - Kinesma Leciono.....                 | 36   |

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Personal Pronouns.....                                     | 36 |
| Past Tense.....  | 38 |
| Infinitives - Past and Present.....                        | 38 |
| Gender-specific Words.....                                 | 42 |
| Adverbs.....   | 43 |
| Deriving Adverbs from Adjectives.....                      | 44 |
| Lesson 6 - Sisesma Leciono.....                            | 46 |
| Interrogative Pronouns.....                                | 46 |
| Numerals.....  | 47 |
| Extended Duration with Dum.....                            | 49 |
| <i>Or - od/o</i> .....                                     | 50 |
| The Family - La Familio [fa-MI-lyo].....                   | 52 |
| Lesson 7 - Sepesma Leciono.....                            | 54 |
| Future Tense.....  | 54 |
| Cardinal Numerals.....                                     | 56 |
| Forms of Transport.....                                    | 61 |
| Lesson 8 - Okesma Leciono.....                             | 62 |
| Ordinal Numerals.....                                      | 62 |
| Months - Monati.....                                       | 62 |
| Dates - Dati.....  | 63 |
| Clothes - Vesti.....                                       | 64 |
| Interrogative Pronouns as Objects with the Accusative..... | 65 |
| People - Homi.....   | 69 |
| Lesson 9 - Nonesma Leciono.....                            | 70 |
| Infinitives.....   | 70 |
| In the House - En la domo.....                             | 77 |
| The Human Body - La Homala Korpo.....                      | 77 |
| Lesson 10 - Dekesma Leciono.....                           | 79 |
| Possessive Adjectives.....                                 | 79 |
| Conditional Mood.....                                      | 80 |
| Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs.....                  | 82 |
| Buildings - Edifici.....                                   | 84 |
| Lesson 11 - Dek e unesma Leciono.....                      | 89 |
| Days of the Week.....                                      | 89 |
| Time.....  | 90 |
| Relative Pronouns.....                                     | 91 |
| Countries.....   | 95 |
| <i>pensar, opiniar, and kredar</i> .....                   | 96 |
| Lesson 12 - Dek e duesma Leciono.....                      | 99 |
| Negatives for Auxiliary and Quasi-auxiliary Verbs.....     | 99 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| More on Time.....                                | 100 |
| Interrogative Adjective - <i>qua</i> .....       | 102 |
| Summary - <i>qua, qui, quo</i> .....             | 102 |
| Impersonal Verbs for Weather.....                | 102 |
| De Certena Lektolibro.....                       | 105 |
| Punctuation Marks.....                           | 107 |
| Lesson 13 - Dek-e-triesma Leciono.....           | 109 |
| Demonstrative Pronouns.....                      | 109 |
| Possession for <i>whose</i> .....                | 111 |
| Indeterminate Pronouns - <i>it, that</i> .....   | 111 |
| Lesson 14 - Dek-e-quaresma Leciono.....          | 116 |
| More on Numerals.....                            | 116 |
| Participles.....                                 | 118 |
| Lesson 15 - Dek-e-kinesma Leciono.....           | 123 |
| Perfect Tenses.....                              | 123 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 1.....                  | 127 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 2.....                  | 128 |
| De La Lernolibro Italiana - 3.....               | 128 |
| De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 11.....          | 129 |
| Lesson 16 - Dek-e-sisesma Leciono.....           | 130 |
| Objects and the Accusative Ending -n.....        | 130 |
| The Passive Voice.....                           | 131 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 4.....                  | 135 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 5.....                  | 135 |
| De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 12.....          | 136 |
| Lesson 17 - Dek-e-sepesma Leciono.....           | 138 |
| Objects and the Accusative Ending -n, Again..... | 138 |
| Prepositions.....                                | 140 |
| Conjunctions.....                                | 141 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 6.....                  | 144 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 7.....                  | 144 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 8.....                  | 145 |
| De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 13.....          | 145 |
| Lesson 18 - Dek-e-okesma Leciono.....            | 147 |
| Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns.....          | 147 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 9.....                  | 153 |
| De Lernolibro Italiana - 10.....                 | 153 |
| De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 14.....          | 154 |
| Lesson 19 - Dek-e-nonesma Leciono.....           | 156 |
| Lektajo 1.....                                   | 156 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Lektajo 2.....  | 156 |
| Lektajo 3 - Vicino - Neighbor.....  | 157 |
| Lektajo 4.....  | 158 |
| Lektajo 5 - Lumoza Exploko.....   | 159 |
| Lektajo 6 - Acensar (to get on) e Decensar (to get off) la<br>Vagono (car).....     | 160 |
| Lektajo 7 - En la Hotelo - (kontoro - reception desk/ front desk)<br>.....          | 161 |
| Lektajo 8 - L'anciena Urbo.....   | 162 |
| Lektajo 9 - La Foxo e la Tortugo (tortoise), Indiana Fablo....                      | 163 |
| Lektajo 10.....   | 163 |
| Lesson 20 - Duadekesma Leciono.....   | 165 |
| Revizo.....   | 165 |
| Lektajo 11 - La Tri Guti.....   | 165 |
| Lektajo 12 - Lingui Internaciona/Interkomprenigilo (Means of<br>Communication)..... | 166 |
| Lektajo 13 - Vestaro - <i>portar</i> (wear) e <i>transportar</i> (carry)....        | 167 |
| Proverbi (ek: Proverbaro da Peus).....  | 168 |
| Lektajo 14 - En la Teatro.....  | 169 |
| Lektajo 15 - La Muso e la Leono (da Aesopos).....                                   | 170 |
| Lektajo 16 - Du Komercala Letri.....  | 171 |
| Lektajo 17 - Linguala Stilo.....  | 173 |
| Lektajo 18 - Pri Idiomaji (idioms) e Propra Kustumo di<br>Naturala Lingui.....      | 173 |
| Advanced Lessons (21 - 30) - English Idioms and Ido.....                            | 175 |
| Lesson 21 - Duadek-e-unesma Leciono.....  | 176 |
| Possession with <i>di</i> , Again.....  | 176 |
| Possession with the help of <i>that</i> .....                                       | 177 |
| Partitive Articles.....   | 177 |
| Apparent Plurals.....   | 177 |
| How to translate adverbials.....  | 178 |
| Noun Phrases as an Adverbs.....   | 178 |
| Adverbs as Quasi-nouns.....   | 179 |
| Adverbs as Adjectives.....  | 179 |
| Adverbs as Conjunctions.....  | 179 |
| How to Translate <i>it</i> .....  | 179 |
| Lesson 22 - Duadek-e-duesma Leciono.....  | 181 |
| How to Translate <i>that</i> .....  | 181 |
| <i>that</i> Should Never Be Omitted.....  | 181 |
| Other Words Omitted.....  | 182 |



|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Possession for <i>whose, of which</i> .....                                     | 182 |
| Infinitive Clauses.....   | 183 |
| Imperative Clauses.....   | 183 |
| Comparison, Again.....  | 184 |
| How to Get <i>Dad</i> and <i>Mom</i> from <i>Father</i> and <i>Mother</i> ..... | 185 |
| Why You Need <i>di</i> Between Noun and Infinitive.....                         | 185 |
| Lesson 23 - Duadek-e-triesma Leciono.....                                       | 187 |
| How to Translate <i>what</i> .....  | 187 |
| Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns, Again.....                                  | 188 |
| Using <i>quale</i> and <i>kom</i> .....   | 190 |
| Lesson 24 - Duadek-e-quaresma Leciono.....                                      | 191 |
| How to Translate <i>shall</i> .....   | 191 |
| How to Translate <i>will</i> .....  | 191 |
| How to Translate <i>should</i> .....  | 191 |
| How to Translate <i>would</i> .....   | 192 |
| How to Translate <i>may</i> .....   | 192 |
| How to Translate <i>must</i> .....  | 193 |
| How to Translate <i>can afford</i> .....  | 193 |
| Habitual Actions.....   | 193 |
| Changes of Tense.....   | 193 |
| <i>Small Talk</i> Questions and Phrases.....                                    | 194 |
| How to Translate <i>it</i> .....  | 195 |
| Nouns with <i>di</i> and Infinitives, Again.....                                | 196 |
| Lesson 25 - Duadek-e-kinesma Leciono.....                                       | 197 |
| How to Translate the English <i>-ing</i> .....                                  | 197 |
| How to Translate the English <i>to</i> .....                                    | 200 |
| How to Get the Most out of <i>-ir, -ar, -or</i> .....                           | 201 |
| Lesson 26 - Duadek-e-sisesma Leciono.....                                       | 202 |
| List of Prepositions.....   | 202 |
| Final Prepositions.....   | 204 |
| Prepositions as Adverbs.....  | 205 |
| Sense According to Place.....   | 205 |
| Prepositions as Verbs.....  | 206 |
| Lesson 27 - Duadek-e-sepesma Leciono.....                                       | 207 |
| Passive Voice Translated by <i>on/onu</i> .....                                 | 207 |
| Prepositions before Infinitives.....  | 208 |
| Impersonal Verbs, Again.....  | 208 |
| Sensations and Feelings.....  | 209 |
| Time of Day - Review.....   | 209 |
| Arithmetic - Review.....  | 210 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Days, Months, etc. - Review.....                     | 210 |
| What are Ergative Verbs?.....                        | 211 |
| Lesson 28 - Duadek-e-okasma Leciono.....             | 212 |
| List of Principal Conjunctions.....                  | 212 |
| Compound Conjunctions.....                           | 213 |
| Translate Meaning, not just Words.....               | 213 |
| Do Something, and Do Something Else.....             | 214 |
| How to translate <i>as</i> .....                     | 215 |
| <i>Kom e Quale</i> - <i>As</i> and <i>Like</i> ..... | 215 |
| <i>Nor</i> .....                                     | 216 |
| - <i>oro</i> and - <i>ilo</i> .....                  | 216 |
| Lesson 29 - Duadek-e-nonesma Leciono.....            | 218 |
| List of Principal Adverbs.....                       | 218 |
| How to translate <i>but</i> .....                    | 220 |
| How to translate <i>ever</i> .....                   | 220 |
| How to translate <i>just</i> .....                   | 221 |
| How to translate <i>both</i> .....                   | 221 |
| Lesson 30 - Triadekesma Leciono.....                 | 223 |
| Order of Words.....                                  | 223 |
| Objects and the Accusative.....                      | 223 |
| Compound Words.....                                  | 224 |
| Impersonal Verbs, Once Again.....                    | 225 |
| Derivation.....                                      | 225 |
| Deriving Verbs from Nouns.....                       | 225 |
| Deriving Nouns from Verbs.....                       | 226 |
| More Verbs Derived from Nouns.....                   | 226 |
| Titles of Courtesy.....                              | 227 |
| Elision.....   | 227 |
| Compound Words, Again.....                           | 227 |
| Appendix A - Derivation, Again.....                  | 230 |
| The Three Root Classes.....                          | 230 |
| A Root Expresses One Meaning.....                    | 230 |
| Deriving Verbs from Nouns, Again.....                | 231 |
| Deriving Verbs from Adjectives.....                  | 232 |
| Deriving Nouns from Adjectives, Again.....           | 232 |
| Appendix B - Affixes.....                            | 233 |
| Notes.....   | 233 |
| Prefixes.....  | 233 |
| Suffixes.....  | 237 |
| Appendix C - Numerals and Compounds.....             | 248 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Numeral Suffixes.....   | 248 |
| Numeral Punctuation.....  | 248 |
| Compound Words, Once Again.....   | 248 |
| Appendix D - Suffixes <i>-aj-</i> and <i>-ur-</i> .....   | 250 |
| Appendix E - Edition History.....   | 251 |
| First edition 1975.....   | 251 |
| Second edition July 1999, "1.0" Third edition August 1999,<br>"1.1" Fourth edition February 2000, "1.2" Fifth edition May<br>2000, "1.3"..... | 252 |
| Sixth edition February 2005, "1.4".....   | 253 |
| Seventh edition November 2008, "1.5".....   | 256 |
| Eighth edition December 2008, "1.6".....  | 257 |
| Ninth edition February 2010, "1.7".....   | 258 |
| Tenth edition December 2010, "1.8".....   | 259 |
| Eleventh edition January 2011 (no version).....   | 260 |
| Twelfth edition April 2024.....   | 261 |
| Index.....  | 265 |
| Colophon.....   | 270 |
| Obtaining a Print Book.....   | 270 |

## ***Preface to the Twelfth Edition***

After having some experience with Esperanto, I rediscovered Ido. I found this great instructional text, and began investigating whether I could get it as a print book, which I would prefer over a PDF given the size. Since such a thick book would benefit greatly from an index, I found myself in the role of reviser. I decided to also add bolding to Ido words that are intermingled with English, as many language texts do. And finally, I wanted to capture some of the details of the various editions in a new Edition History appendix, to give credit to all the contributors. These then are my major contributions to the work.

I would like to thank the author Sro. Niklas ApGawain, both for the original 1975 book and for his kind permission to create yet another edition of the book. Thanks also to all the other contributors to this work. Cumulatively the result is full of clear explanations of how English and Ido work. I also wish to thank Sro. Jerry Muelver, a previous reviser, who provided the word processor document for edition 1.6, the starting document for my work. Without that, this edition would not have been feasible. And finally my thanks go to those in Reddit's *r/ido* forum and the Google Group *Idistaro* for answering my questions on some finer points of Ido usage.

Starting as I did with the eighth (1.6) edition, there could easily be small changes made in the ninth through eleventh editions that escaped my notice. Please report any errors (or improvements) to [KirothimPub@gmail.com](mailto:KirothimPub@gmail.com).

Kim Kaiser  
USA  
April 2024

## ***Preface to the Tenth Edition, "1.8"***

### ***Excerpts***

#### *Revizuri [Revisions]*

1.5 / 2008-11-11

1.6 / 2008-12-30

1.7 / 2010-02-01

1.8 / 2010-12-01

#### *Production and Publication Note*

Revision 1.8  
1 December 2010

This edition of *Ido for All* was revised and formatted from edition 1.4 (2005-02-13) through 1.7 (2010-02-01) for release and publication by the North American Ido Society (NAIS) under the direction of Jerry Muelver, with production services provided by HyText Consulting. For information on obtaining printed versions of this book contact [jmuelver@idomondo.org](mailto:jmuelver@idomondo.org) or visit the NAIS web site at <http://idomondo.org>.

Our appreciation and thanks go to the contributing authors of this work, with special thanks to Sro. Robert Carnaghan and Sro. Niklas ApGawain and Sro. Bebson Y. Takata for their personal effort and contributions to the enhancement and production of *Ido for All* and their active promotion of Ido, the International Language.

## ***Preface to the Sixth Edition, "1.4"***

*IDO FOR ALL*, by Niklas ApGawain + P. D. Hugon + J. L. Moore + L. de Beaufront, revised by an Idiotist (B.Y.T.) with material from various sources, *revizita/ata/ota da zeloza Idisti per materii de diversa fonti, ed fakte ja tradukita da li "tote libere" aden kelka sua lingui "segun sua maniero por sua skopi"*. [... from various sources, revised/being revised/to be revised by zealous Idists with material from various sources, and in fact already translated by them "completely freely" into some of their languages "according to their way for their purposes".]

Lo signifikas ke onu darfas tote libere uzar *Ido For All* por sua skopo segun sua maniero, tradukante la libro aden sua propra linguo pro ke olim Sro Niklas ApGawain per sua grand-anmo permissis me tale ke anke me volas kondutar simile. [That means that one has the right to completely freely use *Ido For All* for their purpose according to their way, translating the book into their own language, because formerly Mr. Niklas ApGawain by his magnanimity permitted me *[to do so]*, so that I also want to behave similarly.]

**Laborinta/anta Idisti por ica lernolibro, ultre B.Y.T. (^\_^ Idiotisto): [Worker Idists for this instruction book, besides B.Y.T. (^\_^ Idiotisto):]**

Hans STUIFBERGEN, Frank KASPER, Stephen L. RICE  
(kapabla Logli ed USAano) [(a capable Loglanist from the USA)]

*Revizuri [Revisions]*

1.0 / 1999-07-26

1.1 / 1999-08-03

1.2 / 2000-02-29

1.3 / 2000-05-10

1.4 / 2005-02-13

... / 20??-??-??

– da qui? *Forsan vu hike e vu  
ibe e vu qua esas lontane.*

[... / 20??-??-??

– by who? *Perhaps you here and  
you there and you who are  
(further away?).]*

This course is a mixture of two different books by Niklas ApGawain and P. D. Hugon, J. L. Moore, and L. de Beaufront. Moreover this *IDO FOR ALL* contains small materials gathered from somewhere by Hans STUIFBERGEN in Holland and Frank KASPER in Germany.

Because of the great kindness of Mr. Neil GRATTON, You can find some MP3 audio files for this course at <http://www.iolairweb.co.uk/ido/idoforall.htm>. [*this URL was updated to <http://idomondo.org/audio> in Edition 1.8's rendering of this preface.*]





**Ido for All**



## ***Lesson 0 - Zeresma Leciono***

### **The Alphabet**

Ido uses all the 26 letters found in the English alphabet. There are no silent letters. Every letter in a word must be pronounced. Each letter has its own particular sound value which distinguishes it from all others. There are no double letters, except where both are to be pronounced separately.

### **Consonants**

Most consonants have exactly the same pronunciation as in English:

**b, d, f, k, l, m, n, p, t, v, w, z, qu, sh.**

The other consonants are pronounced in Ido as follows:

**c** - as *ts* in *bits* (Ido **ca** is pronounced "tsa"), never as in the English *k* or *s* sounds used for *c*.

**g** - always as the hard *g* in *get*, never as the soft *g* in *gin*.

**h** - always sounded, **honoro** [ho-NOR-o] - never silent as it is sometimes in *honor* [ON-er].

**j** - as *s* in *pleasure*, the voiced *sh*.

**r** - rolled (tongue-flick) if possible, but in any case always pronounced, even in such words as **portar** [porr-TARR].

**s** - as *s* in *soft*, never a voiced *z* sound as in *fuse* [fyooz].

**x** - as English *x* ["ks", "gz"], except that the Ido **x** never has the "z" sound found in *xylophone*, but retains the "ks" or "gz" sound even at the beginning of words: **xilofono** [ksi-lo-FO-no].

**y** - this is a consonant as in *yellow*, and is never a vowel.

**ch** - as *ch* in *chat*, never as the *ch* in *machine*.

## Vowels

Vowels have approximately the following sounds (but see notes below):

**a** - as *a* in *father*.

**e** - as *e* in *veil*.

**i** - as *i* in *machine*, an "ee" sound.

**o** - as *o* in *glory*, an "oh" sound.

**u** - as *u* in *rude*, an "oo" sound.

## Important Notes

- There is room for a little variation in the length of the vowel sound, but it should not be too long or too short.
- **a**: Avoid making the "ah" sound too long, so that it becomes "aah" or even worse "aahr".
- **e**: Never pronounce **e** as in English *meter*. Avoid adding a "y" or "ee" sound to the Ido **e** so that it sounds like the *ay* in English *way*.
- **i**: Avoid too much of an "eey" sound to the Ido **i**. Never pronounce **i** as in the English word *white*, so be careful how you say such Ido words as **mikra** [MEE-kra].
- **o**: Avoid adding an "oo" or "w" sound to the Ido **o**, as is the case with English *no* which rhymes with *know*.
- **u**: Never pronounce **u** as in the English words *use* or *universal*, i.e. a "yoo" sound instead of "oo". So be careful with words like **uzata** and **universala**.
- Always say each vowel clearly. Never give a vowel the obscure "uh" sound that is found in many English words, e.g. the *a* in *across*, the *e* in *begin*, or the *o* and *u* in *button*.

## Diphthongs

A diphthong is a vowel sound resulting from two vowel sounds combining. In Ido there are two simple diphthongs:

- **au** - a(ah) + u(oo) giving the "ow" sound found in English *now*. It is never pronounced as English *au* in *Paul*.
- **eu** - e(eh) + u(oo). This is an "eh-oo" sound which does not exist in standard English. **eu** is never a "yoo" sound as in English *neutral*.

## Syllables

**Rule 1.** The **u** of **qu** is not considered a vowel - it is seen as the consonant **w** in these rules.

**Rule 2.** Every vowel that is *not* in a vowel pair gets its own syllable. **ka-to, hun-do**. Note that Rule 1 is applied first, thus **qu** + vowel gets one syllable. **qua, quo-to, a-quo**.

### *Vowel Pairs*

**Rule 3.** If the vowel pair is a diphthong, it gets one syllable. **lau-do, neu-tra**.

**Rule 4.** If the word has a vowel pair and *no* other vowels, each vowel gets its own syllable. **du-o, lu-a, di-o, de-on**.

**Rule 5.** If the word has a vowel pair *and* other vowels:

- **u** before a vowel will tend to become like **w** and the vowel pair gets one syllable. **lin-guo, lin-guis-ti-ko**.
- **i** before a vowel will tend to become like **y** and the vowel pair gets one syllable. **pe-ku-nio, in-ter-na-cio-na**.
- In all other vowel pairs, each vowel gets its own syllable - they are not blended together. **ka-i-to, ko-a-lo**. Here, **ai** is **a-i** [ah-ee] and **oa** is **o-a** [o-ah].

## Accentuation (Stress)

All English words have at least one syllable which is stressed more than the others: BUTter, inTELLigent, ELEphant, beGIN. In English there is no obvious rule about where the stress or accent occurs in a word. It could be in any syllable.

In Ido there is a simple rule with only one exception: *The stress always falls on the second-last syllable*: **HUN-do**, **KA-to**, **LIN-guo**, **fa-MI-lio** [fa-MEE-lyo], **a-ka-DE-mio** [a-ka-DEH-myo], **pe-KU-nio** [pe-KU-nyo].

Here's the exception: verb infinitives (recognizable by **-ar**, **-ir**, **-or** endings) have the stress on the last syllable, for clarity in speech: **po-ZAR**, **drin-KAR**, **drin-KOR**, **drin-KIR**, **do-NAR**, **do-NOR**, **do-NIR**.

## Examples

**amar** [a-MAR], **kredir** [kre-DIR], **finor**, [fi-NOR]

**amata** [a-MA-ta], **kredita** [kre-DI-ta], **finota** [fi-NO-ta]

**espereble** [es-pe-REB-le], **facinda** [fa-CIN-da]

**joyo** [JO-yo], **boao** [bo-A-o], **muzeo** [mu-ZE-o]

**heroo** [he-RO-o], **dio** [DI-o], **duo** [DU-o]

**folio** [FO-lyo], **lilio** [LI-lyo], **mentio** [MEN-tyo], **Italia** [i-TA-lya]

**aquo** [A-qwo], **linguo** [LIN-gwo], **linguistiko** [lin-gwi-STI-ko]

**portuo** [POR-two], **revuo** [RE-vwo]

## Pronunciation Exercise

**Ka vu ja lernas la nova linguo internaciona?**

ka vu ja LER-nas la NO-va LIN-gwo in-terr-na-CYO-na

kah voo zhah lairnahs lah nohvah leengwoh eentairnahtsyohnah

**Me komencis studiar olu ante kelka dii,**

me ko-MEN-cis stu-DYAR O-lu AN-te KEL-ka DI-i

meh kohmentsees stodyahr oh-loo ahnteh kelkah dee-ee

**e me trovas ke olu esas vere tre facila.**

e me TRO-vas ke O-lu ES-as VE-re tre fa-CI-la  
eh meh trohvahs keh oh-loo ehsahs vehreh treh fahkseelah

**Omna-die me lektas texto dum un horo;**

OM-na-DI-e me LEK-tas TEX-to dum un HO-ro  
omnah-dee-eh meh lektahs tekstoh doom oon hohro

**me sempre lektas laute.**

me SEM-pre LEK-tas LAW-te [LAW-te, never laU-te!, au being  
a diphthong.]

meh sempreh lektahs louteh

**Ka vu komprenas to?**

ka vu kom-PRE-nas to

ka voo komprehnahs toh

## The Names of the Letters

The names of the letters in the Ido alphabet are: **a be ce [cho] de e fe/(ef) ge he/(hash) i je ke le/(el) me/(em) ne/(en) o pe que re/(ere) se/(es) [sho] te u ve/(ev) we xe/(exe) ye and ze.**

The forms in parentheses are alternative and unauthorized names. Some Europeans cannot distinguish between b/v, v/w, s/z and s/sh. And the descendants of the Roman Empire do not pronounce *h* very well, since *h* is a silent letter for the Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French etc. In addition, the Japanese are deaf to the differences between *b/v* and *l/r*. So the alternative forms may help to clarify which letter is being pronounced.

## Tips on Learning Ido

Your brain has a language-learning-and-using function that is specialized from other learning behaviors. The trick to learning languages is to tap into the power of that specialized function, to "get past" the standard learning and memorization operations of the brain so you can use the marvelous language tools in the brain's higher functions. Here are some ideas we have found useful and productive:

Many small bites are better than a few big bites. You will learn Ido faster if you break your learning sessions into three 20-minute sessions a day in preference to one 60-minute session.

Learn your first 800 words by diligent memorization. After the first 800 words, you will be expanding your vocabulary primarily by absorption, by reading in Ido and making educated guesses at the meaning of new words.

Read aloud. Even better, record your own voice reading aloud, then re-read the selection while you listen to your recording.

Repetition is the key to accessing your brain's language centers. Repeat new words several times, repeat your read-aloud selections, repeat yesterday's chapter before starting on today's, and rewrite your word lists and flash cards every time you miss a test-translation to repeat your corrections.

Get an English-Ido and Ido-English dictionary, and learn to use it. We like the HTML (web-page) electronic version of Dyer's dictionary, compiled by David Mann, available from the North American Ido Society's web site.

Write in Ido, on a first draft. Don't write your thoughts out in English, then translate from there. Instead, think out your sentence in English if you have to, then write a draft translation in Ido. Reread your Ido, and revise as necessary to polish it up. Eventually, you'll be able to think directly in Ido.

Keep a daily journal, in Ido. Get a notebook, and every day, write about a half-page of text in Ido. You don't have to create deathless prose or profound poetry, so any text will do. Describe your room, your surroundings, your family, your childhood, your rants and



raves on the topics and news stories of the day. Paraphrase or record from memory the dialog or example conversation from yesterday's lesson. Write anything, but write every day.

If possible, get online (by computer), and read the messages and conversations in some of the Ido news or mail groups. Don't worry about knowing the exact meaning of everything you read. Just try to pick out whatever you can, and see how well you can follow the discussion by guessing when you have to. Eventually, you'll be tempted to join in with some comments of your own. Give in to the temptation! Post a message! The Idists who participate in discussion groups welcome new members, and will gladly offer their support and (usually) gentle correction to help your learning progress.

Find and join, or create, a group of Ido activist-students. Language is for communication, and you are only really using Ido if you are communicating in Ido. Get some friends and relatives to join you on your journeys in Idia (Ido-land).

Don't be afraid to make mistakes when you are speaking or writing in Ido. The important thing is to try, make corrections, and try again. Mistakes are part of the process, and give you points of focus for your learning.

Every once in a while, go back and read through some of the early chapters of the first Ido book you studied, and appreciate how much progress you've made since those early days.

Most importantly, have fun! Learning Ido should be an entertaining adventure, not some kind of heavy, grinding chore. If you find yourself getting too serious and grumbly, lighten up! It could be worse, you know, like if you were trying to learn English as a second language!

## Lesson 1 - Unesma Leciono

### Nouns

A noun is a person, place, or thing, anything that you can see, hear, touch, or put a name to, like *table*, *chair*, *man*, *cat*. In Ido, all singular nouns end with the letter **-o**: **kato** (*cat*), **hundo** (*dog*), **tablo** (*table*). Plural nouns end with **-i**: **kati** (*cats*), **hundi** (*dogs*), **tabli** (*tables*).

Generally speaking, a noun ends in **-o** or **-i** regardless if it is in the role of subject, object, or object of a preposition. The exceptions will be noted in later lessons.

### Articles

In English we say *a table* and *an egg*. The words *a* and *an* are indefinite articles. Ido does not use indefinite articles. It is enough to say **ovo** for *egg* or *an egg*; **tablo** for *table* or *a table*, and so on, when referring to some unspecified egg or table, or any egg or table.

The definite article, *the*, used to specify a particular thing being discussed, is **la** in Ido: **matro** - a mother (such as *any mother*); **la matro** - the mother (a specific mother, the one we are discussing).

### Is - esas

The Ido word **esas** is roughly the English word *is* as in *he is*, but also takes the place of *am* or *are* as in *I am* and *you are*. Ido uses the one word **esas** where English uses several different words *am-is-are* to accomplish the same function: **me esas** - I am; **vu esas** - you are; **elo esas** - she is. The Ido way with verbs is to keep everything simple, and very regular, with no exceptions or special treatments or tricky conjugations.

### Notes

**Es** is a short form of **esas**, Though **es** is more convenient, **esas** is just as common. Use either form, by personal preference.

**Vortaro (Vocabulary)**

|                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>me</b> - I/me        | <b>yuno</b> - teenager/ a youth |
| <b>vu</b> - you         | <b>yunulo</b> - boy             |
| <b>buxo</b> - box       | <b>yunino</b> - girl            |
| <b>domo</b> -house      | <b>la</b> - the                 |
| <b>gardeno</b> - garden | <b>en</b> - in                  |
| <b>hundo</b> - dog      | <b>sub</b> - under              |
| <b>kato</b> - cat       | <b>sur</b> - on                 |
| <b>muso</b> - mouse     |                                 |
| <b>tablo</b> - table    | <b>esas/es</b> - is/am/are      |

**Exempli (Examples)**

Mary is a girl. - **Mary esas/es yuno.** // **Mary esas/es yunino.** (You may say either **esas** or **es**.)

Charles is a boy. - **Charles esas yuno.** // **Charles esas yunulo.**

The house is in the garden. - **La domo es en la gardeno.**

I am in the garden. - **Me esas en la gardeno.** (Say "meh", not "mee".)

I am in the house. - **Me esas en la domo.**

You are in the house. - **Vu es en la domo.**

You are under the table. - **Vu esas sub la tablo.**

A dog is on the table in the house. - **Hundo esas sur la tablo en la domo.**

Rex is a dog. - **Rex es hundo.**

William is a cat. - **William esas kato.**

The dog is in the house. - **La hundo esas en la domo.**

The cat is on the table. - **La kato es sur la tablo.**

The box is under the table. - **La buxo esas sub la tablo.**

The cat is on the box. - **La kato esas sur la buxo.**

The mouse is in the house. - **La muso es en la domo.**

The mouse is in the box. - **La muso esas en la buxo.**

The mouse is under the table. - **La muso esas sub la tablo.**

## Verbs - Present Tense

A verb is an action or "doing" word: see, read, touch, chase. Verbs in Ido all have identifying endings, *verb endings*, so you can easily recognize a verb when you see one. In English, the same word could be a verb or a noun: you can pull a plow, or plow the field. That doesn't happen in Ido, where nouns end in **-o** (or **-i** for plurals), and verbs do not.

The verbs you have seen so far in this book all have the ending that shows the present tense, the ending **-as**. The present tense is used when the action in the verb is happening *now*:

**Me vidas la hundo.** - I see the dog.

**Vu tushas la kato.** - You touch the cat.

These are actions taking place at the present moment, so the present tense is used. In English there is more than one present tense - I touch the dog, I am touching the dog. Both of these expressions describe actions taking place in the present. Because the meanings of these two are so similar, Ido says them both in the same way: **Me tushas** (I touch or am touching) **la hundo**. **Me lektas la libro** could therefore be either *I read the book* or *I am reading the book*, or even *I do read the book*.

Remember this, especially when translating English into Ido. Don't translate *I am touching* or *you are reading* word for word. Until you can think naturally in Ido, it is best to change them in your mind to *I touch* and *you read* and then translate that simple form.

## And - ed/e

The Ido word for *and* is **ed**. The final **-d**, which is part of the root, is often dropped if the following word starts with a consonant. It is a question of which one sounds better. Officially you may suit yourself and choose the one you prefer, **ed** or **e**. In practice most Idists use **e** if the following word starts with a consonant, and **ed** if it starts with a vowel. Three other words which you will learn later - **ad/a**, **od/o**, **kad/ka** - allow the same flexibility.

**Vortaro (Vocabulary)****drinkas** - drinks**havas** - has (got)**lektas** - reads**manjas** - eats**prizas** - likes**promenas** - walks/strolls**regardas** - looks (at)**tushas** - touches**vidas** - sees**aquo** - water**fenestro** - window**lakto** - milk**libro** - book**pomo** - apple**pordo** - door**stulo** - chair**e/ed** - and**Exempli (Examples)**I have a dog. - **Me havas hundo.**I see the dog. - **Me vidas la hundo.**The dog sees me. - **La hundo vidas me.**I like the dog. - **Me prizas la hundo.**I like milk. - **Me prizas lakto.**The dog has the milk. - **La hundo havas la lakto.**The cat drinks the milk. - **La kato drinkas la lakto.**You drink the milk. - **Vu drinkas la lakto.**I have the apple. - **Me havas la pomo.**I am eating the apple. - **Me manjas la pomo.**The boy/girl is eating the apple. - **La yuno manjas la pomo.**I am looking at the mouse. - **Me regardas la muso.**The mouse sees the water. - **La muso vidas la aquo.**The mouse is eating the book. - **La muso manjas la libro.**The book is on the table. - **La libro es sur la tablo.**You read the book. - **Vu lektas la libro.**You are reading the book. - **Vu lektas la libro.**The cat looks at me. - **La kato regardas me.**The cat looks at the door. - **La kato regardas la pordo.**

You are touching the door. - **Vu tushas la pordo.**

The cat is touching the window. - **La kato tushas la fenestro.**

I am touching the window. - **Me tushas la fenestro.**

I am walking in the garden. - **Me promenias en la gardeno.**

You and the dog are walking in the garden. - **Vu e la hundo promenias en la gardeno.**

The table and chair are in the house. - **La tablo e la stulo esas en la domo.**

### ***Vortaro (Vocabulary)***

**Bona jorno** - Hello (Good day)

**Til rivido** - Good-bye (Until we meet again)

**Quale vu standas?** - How are you?

**Tre bone danko** - Very well thank you.

Now when you meet another Idist, or go to a congress or international gathering you have the beginnings of a simple conversation.

### ***Konversado (Conversation)***

Here is a conversation between Peter and Mary.

P: Bona jorno!

M: Bona jorno!

P: Quale vu standas?

M: Tre bone, danko. Quale vu standas?

P: Tre bone, danko.

M: Til rivido!

P: Til rivido!

***Exerco (Exercise)***

1. Practice the conversation phrases.
2. Think in Ido of the things you know: Touch the door and say to yourself, **Me tushas la pordo**; read a book and say **Me lektas libro**; and so on, to use and repeat as many of the words you've learned as possible.
3. Read aloud every Ido sentence in a lesson as many times as possible.
4. When you begin a new lesson, start by paging back and reviewing and reading the Ido sentences in the previous lesson, to get your Ido "frame of mind" into high gear. Then dive into the new lesson.

## ***Lesson 2 - Duesma Leciono***

### **Adjectives**

Adjectives are words which modify nouns and describe the appearance or quality of something: big, small, bad, beautiful, red. Ido adjectives are easily recognised by their **-a** ending, as shown in the vocabulary below.

#### ***Vortaro***

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>dormas</b> - sleeps            | <b>anciena</b> - old (contrary to new) |
| <b>drinkajo</b> - drink           | <b>olda</b> - old (of living beings)   |
| <b>floro</b> - flower             | <b>bela</b> - beautiful                |
| <b>kavalo</b> - horse             | <b>blua</b> - blue                     |
| <b>manjajo</b> - food             | <b>granda</b> - big/large              |
| <b>muro</b> - wall                | <b>mikra</b> - little/small            |
| <b>por</b> -for                   | <b>reda</b> - red                      |
| <b>plado</b> - plate              | <b>yuna</b> - young                    |
| <b>taso</b> - cup                 | <b>anke</b> - also                     |
| <b>kompras</b> - buys             | <b>hike</b> - here                     |
| <b>lernas</b> [LERR-nas] - learns | <b>mea</b> - my                        |
| <b>habitas</b> - lives            | <b>vua</b> - your                      |
| <b>parolas</b> - talks/speaks     | <b>adhike</b> - "to" here              |
| <b>pozas</b> - puts               | <b>adsur</b> - onto/upon               |

#### ***Exempli***

You are learning Ido. - **Vu lernas Ido.**

You speak Ido. - **Vu parolas Ido.**

I am learning Ido. - **Me lernas Ido.**

I speak Ido. - **Me parolas Ido.**

I have a beautiful house. - **Me havas bela domo.**

My house is big. - **Mea domo esas granda.**

The house is big. - **La domo esas granda.**

I live here. - **Me habitas hike.**



I sleep in the garden. - **Me dormas en la gardeno.**

My dog is old. - **Mea hundo es olda.**

My dog also lives here. - **Mea hundo anke habitas hike.**

The dog sleeps in my small garden. - **La hundo dormas en mea mikra gardeno.**

The little cat looks at the big dog. - **La mikra kato regardas la granda hundo.**

You live in a beautiful house. - **Vu habitas en bela domo.**

You sleep on the beautiful table. - **Vu dormas sur la bela tablo.**

The cat sleeps under the beautiful flower. - **La kato dormas sub la bela floro.**

The horse is old. - **La kavalo esas olda.**

The little horse is young. - **La mikra kavalo es yuna.**

The young horse likes the drink. - **La yuna kavalo prizas la drinkajo.**

You are buying food for the horse. - **Vu kompras manjajo por la kavalo.**

I buy food here. - **Me kompras manjajo hike.**

I am putting your plate here. - **Me pozas vua plado adhike.**

The plate is red. - **La plado esas reda.**

I am putting food on the plate. - **Me pozas manjajo adsur la plado.**

The old mouse eats the food. - **La olda muso manjas la manjajo.**

A drink is in the small cup. - **Drinkajo es en la mikra taso.**

The blue cup is on the table. - **La blua taso esas sur la tablo.**

You see the mouse in the cup. - **Vu vidas la muso en la taso.**

Your milk is also in the cup. - **Vua lakto es anke en la taso.**

I am putting the book on the wall. - **Me pozas la libro adsur la muro.**

## Negative Verbs

The negative verb in Ido is formed by using **ne**. It means *not*.

In English we say *I am not, I must not, I have not (I haven't)*. But in Ido the negation **ne** is usually in front of the verb:

**Me ne es, Me ne havas**, but,

**Me ne mustas** - I don't have to...

**Me NE mustas irar adibe.** - I do not have to go there.

**Me NE mustas facar to.** - I don't have to do it (no responsibility to do it).

**Me mustas NE facar to.** - I must not do it (total responsibility to NOT do it, stronger sense than *I don't have to do it.*).

Most verbs in English add *does* or *do* to help form the negative:

I *do* not have (I don't have). Peter *does* not read (doesn't read).

Ido forms negatives without using an equivalent to *do* or *does*. Ido uses the same simple **ne** pattern for all negatives:

**Me ne havas** (I do not have), **Peter ne lektas** (Peter does not read).

## Deriving Nouns from Adjectives

Ido creates many new words (called *derivations*) from a smaller group of *root* words (called *radicals*) by adding new beginnings and endings to the roots to specify the meaning. We will have many, many examples of this process.

Our first example shows how to make nouns from adjectives. The process is simple: change the adjective ending **-a** to the noun ending **-o**, and you have a noun with the same sense of the adjective:

**bona** - good → **bono** - good one/ good man.

**yuna** - young → **yuno** - young one/ young boy or girl

**acesora** - accessory → **acesoro** - an accessory.

You can also go the other way, to create adjectives from nouns:  
**oro** - gold → **ora** - golden, made of gold.

### ***Exempli***

I am - **Me esas**. I am not - **Me ne esas**.

I have - **Me havas**. I haven't - **Me ne havas**.

I see - **Me vidas**. I don't see - **Me ne vidas**.

I like - **Me prizas**. I don't like - **Me ne prizas**.

I walk - **Me promen****as**. I am not walking - **Me ne promen****as**

I am not old. - **Me ne es olda**.

I don't see you. - **Me ne vidas vu**.

You don't see me. - **Vu ne vidas me**.

I don't like the house. - **Me ne prizas la domo**.

I am not eating the food. - **Me ne manjas la manjajo**.

The dog doesn't speak Ido. - **La hundo ne parolas Ido**.

You do not live in London. - **Vu ne habitas en London**.

The dog is not learning Ido. - **La hundo ne lernas Ido**.

Maria doesn't live in Paris. - **Maria ne habitas en Paris**.

You are not looking at Maria. - **Vu ne regardas Maria**.

You are not reading the book. - **Vu ne lektas la libro**.

The plate is not in the house. - **La plado ne esas en la domo**.

The dog isn't looking at the horse. - **La hundo ne regardas la kavalo**.

The cat is not sleeping in the box. - **La kato ne dormas en la buxo**.

The boy/girl is not drinking the milk. - **La yuno ne drinkas la lakto**.

**Vortaro**

**bruna** - brown  
**chasas** - chases  
**do** - so/therefore  
**dop** - behind  
**ek** - out of  
**elu** - she/her  
**felica** - happy  
**feroca** - fierce  
**fisho** - fish  
**foresto** - forest  
**gazoneyo** - lawn

**grosa** - fat  
**hodie** - today  
**ilu** - he/him  
**magra** - thin/lean  
**nun** - now  
**ofte** - often  
**sama** - same  
**strado** - street  
**tre** - very  
**trista** - sad  
**adsur** - onto/upon

**Exempli**

Felix is a thin old cat. - **Felix esas magra olda kato.**

He lives behind your house in the forest. - **Ilu habitas dop vua domo en la foresto.**

He often walks in my large garden. - **Ilu ofte promenias en mea granda gardeno.**

He often sleeps on my lawn. - **Ilu ofte dormas sur mea gazoneyo.**

Today Felix is chasing a fat brown mouse. - **Hodie Felix chasas grosa bruna muso.**

Today Felix hasn't got any food. - **Hodie Felix ne havas manjajo.**

He is very sad. - **Ilu es tre trista.**

So I put a fish for him on a plate in the garden. - **Do me pozas fisho por ilu adsur plado en la gardeno.**

Now Felix is very happy. - **Nun Felix esas tre felica.**

Maria sees Felix. - **Maria vidas Felix.**

She doesn't like Felix and chases him out of my garden. - **Elu ne prizas Felix e chasas ilu ek mea gardeno.**

Felix is on the street. - **Felix esas sur la strado.**

Rex is a fierce dog. - **Rex es feroca hundo.**

Rex sees Felix and chases him. - **Rex vidas Felix e chasas ilu.**

### ***Konversado***

There are some grammatical points in this conversation that you haven't seen up to now. They will be explained in later lessons. You can understand and use these conversational phrases without knowing the grammatical fine points just yet.

Good morning! - **Bona matino!**

Good day! - **Bona jorno!**

What is your name? - **Quale vu nomesas?**

My name is Peter. - **Me nomesas Peter.**

How are you? - **Quale vu standas?**

Very well. - **Tre bone.**

Thank you! - **Me dankas!**

Are you tired? - **Ka vu es fatigita?**

Not at all! - **Tote ne!**

Yes, a little. - **Yes, kelkete.**

No, sir. - **No, sioro.**

If you please. - **Me pregas.**

I am hungry. - **Me hungras.**

Are you thirsty? - **Ka vu durstas?**

Give me a glass. - **Donez a me glaso.**

A cup of tea. - **Taso de teo.**

Do you want...? - **Ka vu deziras...?**

I don't mind. - **Me ne objecionas.**

It does not matter. - **Ne importas.**

## Adjectives - Short Forms

You may drop the final **a** of adjectives for euphony: **bona** → **bon**

### ***Konversado***

Here is another conversation between Peter and Mary.

P: Bon jorno! Quale vu standas?

M: Tre bone, danko. E vu?

P: Me standas bone, danko. Me nomesas Peter. Quale vu nomesas?

M: Me nomesas Mary.

P: Til rivido, Mary!

M: Til rivido, Peter!

## Lesson 3 - Triesma Leciono

### Questions

So far we have been making simple statements in Ido, such as: **Me vidas la kato** or **Me tushas la hundo**. Now we will see how to make questions.

The English language uses two basic models for questions:

1. Some verbs can be used as questions by changing the word order, for example: *I must* becomes *Must I?* *He is* becomes *Is he?* and *They can* becomes *Can they?*.
2. Some other verbs require *do* or *does* at the beginning of the sentence to make it into a question: *He sings* becomes *Does he sing?*, and *You come* becomes *Do you come?*

In Ido question-making is much simpler. First, the words are kept in exactly the same order as for a statement, but to make it clear that a question is being asked the word **ka** (or **kad**) is placed at the beginning of the sentence.

**Ka/Kad** has no equivalent in English:

**Vu havas kato** (You've got a cat) becomes:

**Ka vu havas kato?** (Do you have a cat? Have you got a cat?)

**Me manjas ovo** (I am eating an egg) becomes:

**Ka me manjas ovo?** (Am I eating an egg?)

Note, as with **ed/e**, if the following word begins with a vowel then it is usual, though not obligatory, to use **kad** instead:

**Ilu mustas** (He must) → **Kad ilu mustas?** (Must he?),

or, you may use **kad** always, regardless of the following word.

Note, if there is a question-word like who, where, etc., **kad/ka** is not used:

**Ube vu habitas?** - Where do you live?

**Kad vu komprenis?** - Did you understand?

**Vortaro**

|   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> - to                                     | <b>no</b> - no                |
| <b>ad</b> - to (before word beginning with vowel) | <b>ol/olu</b> - it            |
| <b>arboro</b> - tree                              | <b>parko</b> - park           |
| <b>bona</b> - good                                | <b>policisto</b> - policeman  |
| <b>blanka</b> - white                             | <b>ponto</b> - bridge         |
| <b>bruna</b> - brown                              | <b>rivero</b> - river         |
| <b>ibe</b> - there                                | <b>portas</b> - carries/wears |
| <b>iras</b> - goes                                | <b>ucelo</b> - bird           |
| <b>jupo</b> - skirt                               | <b>venas</b> - comes          |
| <b>mala</b> - bad                                 | <b>yes</b> - yes              |
| <b>nigra</b> - black                              |                               |

**Exempli**

I am, Am I? - **Me es, Ka me es?**

He is, Is he? - **Ilu es, Kad ilu es?**

You have, Have you? - **Vu havas, Ka vu havas?**

Am I good? No. - **Ka me esas bona? No.**

Are you beautiful? Yes. - **Ka vu esas bela? Yes.**

Is Mary wearing a beautiful skirt? - **Ka Mary portas bela jupo?**

Yes, she is wearing a beautiful white skirt. - **Yes, elu portas bela blanka jupo.**

Is the policeman in the park? - **Ka la policisto es en la parko?**

Is he in the park? - **Kad ilu esas en la parko?**

No, he is not here today. - **No, ilu ne esas hike hodie.**

Have you got a black dog? - **Ka vu havas nigra hundo?**

No, I have a brown dog. - **No, me havas bruna hundo.**

He is drinking. Is he drinking? - **Ilu drinkas. Kad ilu drinkas?**

Have you a cat? - **Ka vu havas kato?**

Yes, I have a white cat. - **Yes, me havas blanka kato.**

Is she coming? - **Kad elu venas?**



No, she is going to the bridge. - **No, elu iras a la ponto.**

Is the bird drinking? - **Ka la ucelo drinkas?**

Is the bird on the bridge? - **Ka la ucelo es sur la ponto?**

No, it is not there. - **No, olu ne esas ibe.**

She is eating. Is she eating? - **Elu manjas. Kad elu manjas?**

Is she eating a fish? - **Kad elu manjas fisho?**

Is the fish in the water? - **Ka la fisho esas en la aquo?**

Yes, it is in the water, and the dog as well. - **Yes, olu esas en la aquo, e la hundo anke.**

## Plurals

In English, to show that we are talking about more than one thing, we usually add an *s*, e.g. *cat* becomes *cats*, *pig* becomes *pigs*, etc. In Ido, forming the plural is also very simple. The **-o** ending of the noun is changed to an **-i**, so that **kato** (*cat*) becomes **kati** (*cats*), **hundo** (*dog*) becomes **hundi** (*dogs*) and so on without exception.

The adjective does not change for a plural noun; but when used without a noun, it becomes a noun itself, and then takes the plural form, if necessary:

**blanka hundi** - white dogs, **nigra kavali** - black horses

**La blanki e la nigri** - The whites and the blacks.

## The Definite Article **le** for Plurals

The definite article **le** is used when there is no other sign that the reference is intended to be plural:

**le yes e le no** - the ayes and the nays

**blanka hundi** - white dogs, **nigra kavali** - black horses

**Le blanka e le nigra** - The whites and the blacks.

**Exempli**

a cat, cats - **kato, kati**

a table, tables - **tablo, tabli**

I see the cat. - **Me vidas la kato.**

You see the cats. - **Vu vidas la kati.**

The cats are on the tables. - **La kati esas sur la tabli.**

The cat is sleeping behind the flowers. - **La kato dormas dop la flori.**

The books are black. - **La libri esas nigra.**

Does he like apples? - **Kad ilu prizas pomi?**

The parks are beautiful. - **La parki es bela.**

Mary likes white skirts. - **Mary prizas blanka jupi.**

Have you got a beautiful skirt? - **Ka vu havas bela jupo?**

The fish are in the water. - **La fishi esas en la aquo.**

The policemen are not fat. - **La policisti ne esas grosa.**

The policemen are chasing the teenagers. - **La policisti chasas la yuni.**

The mice are chasing the cat. - **La musu chasas la kato.**

The birds are in the trees. - **La uceli es en la arbori.**

The birds are on the bridges. - **La uceli esas sur la ponti.**

Are the children in the trees? - **Ka la yuni esas en la arbori?**

The horses are drinking the water. - **La kavali drinkas la aquo.**

The flowers are in the cup on the table. - **La flori es en la taso sur la tablo.**

**Vortaro**

|                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>danko</b> - thank you              | <b>kuko</b> - cake                   |
| <b>deziras</b> - desires/wants        | <b>me pregas</b> - please            |
| <b>durstas</b> - is/are thirsty       | <b>taso de kafeo</b> - cup of coffee |
| <b>hungras</b> - is/are hungry        | <b>yen</b> - here is                 |
| <b>glaso</b> - glass                  | <b>pekunio</b> - money               |
| <b>glaso de lakto</b> - glass of milk | <b>semblas ke</b> - it seems that    |
| <b>kafe</b> [ka-FE-o] - coffee        | <b>esas/es</b> - is/am/are           |
| <b>kafeerio</b> [ka-fe-E-ryo] - cafe  | <b>ma</b> - but                      |

**Konversado**

En la kafeerio

P: Bon jorno, Mary! Quale vu standas?

M: Bon jorno, Peter! Me standas bone, danko. E vu?

P: Tre bone, danko. Ka vu durstas?

M: Yes, me durstas. Ube la kafeerio esas?

P: Yen la kafeerio! Ka vu deziras taso de kafeo?

M: No, danko. Me deziras glaso de lakto, me pregas.

P: Ka vu hungras?

M: Yes, me hungras.

P: Ka vu deziras kuko?

M: Yes, me pregas. Me prizas kuki.

P: Hm...Mary... Semblas ke me ne havas mea pekunii... Ka vu havas.....pekunio?

**General questions**

01) Quale vu nomesas? → Me nomesas Bebson Hochfeld.

02) Quale vu standas? → Me standas tre bone.

03) Ka vu ofte drinkas lakto? → Yes, me tre ofte drinkas lakto.

04) Ka vu havas bela domo? → Yes, me havas bela, mikra domo.

05) Ka vu havas gardeno? → Yes, me havas mikra gardeno.

- 06) Ka vu havas kato? → No, me ne havas un.
- 07) Ka vu prizas kati? → No, me ne prizas kati.
- 08) Ka vu havas granda hundo? → No, me nek (neither) prizas hundo.
- 09) Ka vu es en la parko? → Yes, me es en la parko.
- 10) Ka vu hungras? → Yes, me es grosa e sempre hungras.
- 11) Ka vu prizas kafeo? → Yes, me tre prizas kafeo.
- 12) Ka vu durstas? → No, me ne durstas ma me hungras.
- 13) Ka vu deziras kuko? → Yes, me multe deziras kuko.
- 14) Ka vu esas bona? → Yes, me esas tre bona segun me (as far as I know).
- 15) Ka vu prizas blanka musi? → No, no, me ne prizas musi.

## Colors

**blanka** - white

**blua** - blue

**bruna** - brown

**flava** - yellow

**griza** - grey

**nigra** - black

**purpura** - purple

**oranjea** - orange

**reda** - red

**rozea** - pink

**verda** - green

**violea** - violet

## Imperatives

The imperative is the form of the verb used for giving orders and commands. So far we have met the present tense ending **-as**, as in **drinkas**, **manjas**, etc. To make the above words into commands is easy. You merely exchange the **-as** ending with **-ez**. This gives for example: **Drinkez!** (Drink!), **Manjez!** (Eat!), **Venez!** (Come!).

**Vortaro****apertez** - open!**donez** - give!**irez** - go!**klozez** - close!**pozez** - put!**levez** - pick up!**sideskez** - sit down!**staceskez** - stand up!**tushez** - touch!**krayono** - pencil**adsur** - onto/upon**Exempli**Stand up! - **Staceskez!**Sit down! - **Sideskez!**Open the box! - **Apertez la buxo!**Eat the apple! - **Manjez la pomo!**Open the book! - **Apertez la libro!**Open the door! - **Apertez la pordo!**Close the book! - **Klozez la libro!**Close the window! - **Klozez la fenestro!**Touch the chair! - **Tushez la stulo!**Touch the window! - **Tushez la fenestro!**Drink your coffee! - **Drinkez vua kafeo!**Pick the book up! - **Levez la libro!**Pick the chair up! - **Levez la stulo!**Pick up the pencil! - **Levez la krayono!**Give the book to me! - **Donez la libro a me!**Put the cup on the table! - **Pozez la taso adsur la tablo!**Put the plate on the chair! - **Pozez la plado adsur la stulo!**Put the pencil on the table! - **Pozez la krayono adsur la tablo!**Put the pencil on the chair! - **Pozez la krayono adsur la stulo!**

## Animals

Note that the following can be either male or female. Distinction is made in the following lesson.

**anado** - duck

**bovo** - cow or bull

**cervo** - deer

**elefanto** - elephant

**gorilo** - gorilla

**hano** - chicken, hen or rooster

**hundo** - dog

**kamelo** - camel

**kato** - cat

**kapro** - goat

**kavalo** - horse

**krokodilo** - crocodile

**leopardo** - leopard

**leono** - lion

**muso** - mouse

**mutono** - sheep

**porko** - pig

**tigro** - tiger

**simio** [SI-myo] - monkey

**urso** - bear

**volfo** - wolf

## Lesson 4 - Quaresma Leciono

### Word-Building - Vortifado

Lesson 2 introduced the concept of derivations. New words in Ido are created from roots (basic words) by adding an affix (word part) with a specific function. *Affix* is the general term for an attachable word part. A *prefix* attaches to the front of a word, and a *suffix* attaches to the end of a word. The logical use of affixes enables you to make your vocabulary much wider with very little effort. For instance, the root **yun-** has the sense of *youth*, so **yuno** with the suffix (the part added on the end of a word) **-o** is a noun that means a *youth* or *young person*, and **yuna** with the suffix **-a** is an adjective meaning *youthful* or *young*.

The question of gender is handled in Ido with a suffix. The addition of **-ul-** into the word makes any person or animal into a male: **katulo** (from **kato**) - tomcat, **hundulo** (from **hundo**) - a male dog, etc. The female equivalent is **-in-**: **yunino** (girl), **katino** (she-cat), **hundino** (she-dog, bitch), and so on.

### Vortifado

Here then are the first affixes:

**-in-** - female: **yunino** (girl), **kavalino** (mare), **hanino** (hen).

**-ul-** - male: **yunulo** (boy), **kavalulo** (stallion), **hanulo** (cock).

More examples:

- **filio** - child, **filiulo** - son, **filiino** - daughter
- **kuzo** - cousin, **kuzulo** - male cousin, **kuzino** - female cousin
- **sekretario** - secretary, **sekretariulo** - man secretary, **sekretariino** - woman secretary
- **doktoro** - doctor, **doktorulo** - man doctor, **doktorino** - woman doctor

When necessary, the prefix **ge-** marks common gender (both sexes

together): **geavi** - grandparents, **gefili** - children or sons and daughters. But *parents*, however, is translated as **genitori**.

### **Note**

Gender is usually left unmarked in Ido, as is often the case in English. Only use **-ul-** and **-in-** when you want to make the sex of a person or animal clear, when it really matters to the meaning of the communication. Don't use these affixes unnecessarily.

The appendices of this book have complete lists of affixes for your ready reference.

### **Vortaro**

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| <b>avan</b> - in front of                    | <b>mediko</b> - doctor               |
| <b>butiko</b> - shop                         | <b>musino</b> - mouse (female)       |
| <b>che</b> - in/at/to (house or business of) | <b>musulo</b> - mouse (male)         |
| <b>dentisto</b> - dentist                    | <b>nur</b> - only                    |
| <b>familio</b> [fa-MI-lyo] - family          | <b>preferas</b> - prefers            |
| <b>frukto</b> - fruit                        | <b>staciono</b> - station            |
| <b>karno</b> [KARR-no] - meat                | <b>ruro</b> [RU-rro] - country(side) |
| <b>karno-vendisto</b> - butcher              | <b>spozino</b> - wife                |
| <b>hundulo</b> - dog (male)                  | <b>spozulo</b> - husband             |
| <b>katino</b> - cat (female)                 | <b>urbo</b> [URR-bo] - town          |
| <b>kavalino</b> - horse (female)             | <b>vendas</b> - sells                |
| <b>kavalulo</b> - horse (male)               | <b>vendisto</b> - seller             |
| <b>kirko</b> [KIRR-ko] - church              | <b>yunino</b> - girl                 |
| <b>ma</b> - but                              | <b>yunulo</b> - boy                  |

### **Exempli**

Mary is a girl. - **Mary es yunino.**

Charles is a boy. - **Charles esas yunulo.**

He has a male dog. - **Ilu havas hundulo.**

An apple is a fruit. - **Pomo es frukto.**

I am only buying a female cat. - **Me nur kompras katino.**



I often go to the town. - **Me ofte iras a la urbo.**

I often go to the dentist's. - **Me ofte iras che la dentisto.**

The butcher sells meat. - **La karno-vendisto vendas karno.**

Alan is at the doctor's. - **Alan es che la mediko.**

I don't buy it at the doctor's. - **Me ne kompras olu che la mediko.**

Your husband is called Jack. - **Vua spozulo nomesas Jack.**

My wife is going to the shops. - **Mea spozino iras a la butiki.**

Today Lesley is going to the shops. - **Hodie Lesley iras a la butiki.**

She is buying meat for the family. - **Elu kompras karno por la familio.**

The mare is not in the country. - **La kavalino ne es en la ruro.**

He is selling the stallion in the town. - **Ilu vendas la kavalulo en la urbo.**

Paul likes meat, but Roger prefers fish. - **Paul prizas karno, ma Roger preferas fisho.**

I do not buy my fish at the greengrocer's. - **Me ne kompras mea fisho che la frukto-vendisto.**

The church is in the town in front of the station. - **La kirko es en la urbo avan la staciono.**

I am buying a white female mouse and a brown male mouse for you. - **Me kompras blanka musino e bruna musulo por vu.**

## Possession with *di*

In English there are 2 different ways of showing that somebody owns something. For example, if Roger owns a book we can refer to the book either as *Roger's book* or *the book of Roger*; or if my wife has a cat I can refer to it either as *my wife's cat* or *the cat of my wife*.

But in Ido there is only one way of showing possession: use **di** for *of*, so that *Peter's book* can only be translated as *the book of Peter*, and becomes **la libro di Peter**; *my wife's cat* (*the cat of my wife*)

becomes **la kato di mea spozino**.

### ***Exempli***

Mary's dog - **la hundo di Mary**

Peter's house - **la domo di Peter**

the girl's cat - **la kato di la yunino**

the cat's meat - **la karno di la kato**

the dog's meat - **la karno di la hundo**

the cat of Mary - **la kato di Mary**

the book of Mary - **la libro di Mary**

my husband's cup - **la taso di mea spozulo**

the boys' family - **la familio di la yunuli**

the family's food - **la manjajo di la familio**

the dog of the boy - **la hundo di la yunulo**

the doctor's family - **la familio di la mediko**

the teacher's house - **la domo di la instruktisto**

the girls of this school - **la yunini di ca skolo**

the cat of Philip / Philip's cat - **la kato di Philip**

### **Quantity with *de***

English uses another sense for *of*, not really possession but showing quantity from an origin or source. For example, a cup of coffee is a quantity of coffee (not a cup belonging to coffee), a stock of books is a quantity of books (not a stock belonging to books). Ido uses **de** for *of* in phrases dealing with this type of quantity, so that *a stock of books* is **stoko de libri**, and *a cup of coffee* is **taso de kafeo**. Be very careful not to confuse **de** with **di**.

### ***Exempli***

Mary's flowers - **la flori di Mary**

a box of apples - **buxo de pomi**

a cup of coffee - **tasó de kafeo**

a cup of tea - **tasó de teo**

a glass of milk - **glasó de lakto**

a glass of water - **glasó de aquo**

a bottle of wine - **botelo de vino**

a bottle of milk - **botelo de lakto**

a family of doctors - **familio de mediki**

the dentist's cups of coffee - **la tasi de kafeo di la dentisti**

### ***Vortaro***

**adube** - to where

**askoltas** - listens to

**atraktiva** - attractive

**biro** - beer

**bone** - well (adverb)

**botelo** - bottle

**de** - of (quantity)

**di** - of (possession)

**instruktas** - teaches

**instruktisto** - teacher

**skolo** - school

**teo** - tea

**vino** - wine

**ca** - this (adjective)

**li** - they (plural of ilu, elu, olu)

**do** - then/so

### ***Exempli***

They teach well. - **Li instruktas bone.**

She is looking at a boy. - **Elu regardas yunulo.**

She is looking at a bottle. - **Elu regardas botelo.**

They are very bad children. - **Li es tre mala yuni.**

The boy has a bottle of water. - **La yunulo havas botelo de aquo.**

The teachers of this school are good. - **La instruktisti di ca skolo es bona.**

It is the teacher's bottle of water. - **Olu esas la botelo de aquo di la instruktisto.**

The boy and the girl are drinking the water. - **La yunulo e la yunino drinkas la aquo.**

They are not listening and so they are not learning. - **Li ne askoltas e do li ne lernas.**

The attractive girl is not listening to the bad teacher. - **La atraktiva yunino ne askoltas la mala instruktisto.**

### ***Konversado***

En la drinkerio [drin-KE-ryo]

P: Bon vespero, Mary! Quale vu standas hodie?

M: Me standas bone, danko. Quale vu standas?

P: Tre bone, danko.

M: Adube ni iras? - ( *To* where are we going? )

P: Ni iras a la drinkerio. La drinkerio nomesas la Nigra Porko. Mea amiki dicas ke olu es tre bona drinkerio.

M: Me ne savas ube la Nigra Porko esas. Ube olu esas, Peter?

P: Olu es dop la domo di Sioro Jones, la dentisto.

M: Me rare iras a ta strado.

P: Ho, me ofte iras a ta strado, e me ofte drinkas biro en la Nigra Porko. Ha! Yen ol! Ka vu deziras biro, Mary?

M: Ka vu havas pekunio?

P: Ho, yes! Hodie me havas pekunio.

M: Do, me deziras glaso de biro.

### **Foods - Manjaji**

**butro** - butter

**fabo** - bean

**fisho** - fish

**flor-kaulo** - cauliflower

**fromajo** - cheese

**karno** [KARR-no] - meat

**karoto** - carrot

**ovo** - egg

**kaulo** [KAw-lo] - cabbage

**pipro** - pepper

**pizo** - pea

**rosto-pano** - toast

**salo** - salt

**sauco** [SAw-co] - sauce/gravy

**karno-sauco** [KARR-no-SAw-co] - gravy

**sociso** - sausage

**sukro** - sugar

**konfitajo** - jam

**kukombro** - cucumber

**latugo** - lettuce

**margarino** - margarine

**mustardo** - mustard

**onyono** - onion

**pano** - bread

**supo** - soup

**tarto** [TARR-to] - tart

**terpomo** [terr-PO-mo] - potato

**tomato** - [to-MA-to] - tomato

**torto** [TORR-to] - pie

**vinagro** - vinegar

**yen** - here is/are

### ***Exempli***

Give me a fork. - **Donez a me forketo.**

I have no spoon. - **Me ne havas kuliero.**

This knife is not sharp. - **Ta kultelo ne esas akuta.**

Pass me the salt. - **Pasigez a me la salo.**

May I trouble you for the bread? - **Kad vu voluntus pasigar la pano?**

Bring me a bottle of stout. - **Adportez a me botelo de nigra biro.**

Will you have a glass of ale? - **Kad vu deziras glaso de flava biro?**

I only drink water. - **Me drinkas nur aquo.**

Are you a teetotaller? - **Kad vu esas ne-alkoholisto?**

Will you have some salad? - **Kad vu deziras salado?**

Here is a fine lettuce. - **Yen bela latugo.**

Do you take oil and vinegar? - **Kad vu prenas oleo e vinagro?**

Here are the pepper and salt. - **Yen la pipro e la salo.**

A teetotaller used to be **anti-alkoholisto** but now a simple **ne-alkoholisto**, a person who never drinks alcohol.

## ***Lesson 5 - Kinesma Leciono***

### **Personal Pronouns**

By now most of the personal pronouns have been introduced, but for easy reference they are listed together below.

**me** - I/me

**tu** - you (familiar)

**vu** - you

**il, ilu** - he/him

**el, elu** - she/her

**ol, olu** - it (usually for an inanimate thing)

**lu** - he/she/it (indefinite *it*)

**ni** - we/us

**vi** - you

**li (ili/eli/oli)** - they/them

**on, onu** - one/they/people

When necessary, the gender of they/them may be indicated by using the fuller forms instead of just **li**:

**ili** for the masculine,

**eli** for the feminine, and

**oli** for the neuter.

And similarly in the singular **lu** is the common gender form of **il**, **el**, **ol**, corresponding to the plural **li**. This form is useful in such sentences as:

If the reader desires fuller details, he or she (**lu**) may check the encyclopedia.

**onu/on** - one/they/people:

**Onu/On dicez to quon on volas.** - Let people say what they like.

### ***Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives***

The reflexive pronoun is **su** - himself/herself/itself/themselves

(third person only). The reflexive adjective is **sua** - his own/her own/its own/their own (third person only).

**Ilu lavas su.** - He washes himself.

**Li lavas su.** - They wash themselves.

**Ilu manjis sua pomi, elu manjis sui.** - He ate his apples, she ate hers.

But, because **su** can be used only for third person:

**Me manjis mea poma.** - I ate my apple. (Not: **Me manjis sua poma.**)

**Me lavas me.** - I wash myself.

**Vu lavas vu.** - You wash yourself.

### Note

1. **tu** refers to one person only. It shows affection towards the person addressed, and is therefore only to be used in special circumstances: a) within the family, b) between close friends, c) when addressing small children, d) perhaps when addressing an animal or pet.
2. **vu** also refers to one person only. It is the usual word for *you*.
3. **vi** refers to more than one person, and is the plural of both **tu** and **vu**.

### Vortaro

**me** - I/me

**ni** - we/us

**tu** - you (a close friend, a friendly dog)

**vi** - you (more than one person)

**li** - they/them

**vu** - you (acquaintances)

**ilu** - he/him

**elu** - she/her

**olu** - it

## **Exempli**

Are you good? - **Ka vu esas bona?**

I am a dentist. - **Me es dentisto.**

You are a doctor. - **Vu es mediko.**

You are beautiful. - **Tu esas bela.**

It is in the house. - **Olu es en la domo.**

You are good doctors. - **Vi esas bona mediki.**

He has a good friend. - **Ilu havas bona amiko.**

We are reading your books. - **Ni lektas vua libri.**

She likes beautiful flowers. - **Elu prizas bela flori.**

They are chasing the horses. - **Li chasas la kavali.**

## **Past Tense**

In previous lessons we used the present tense verb ending **-as** which shows that the action is taking place now. Changing this ending to **-is** forms the past tense:

**elu kantis** - she sang/ she has sung/ she was singing/ she did sing.

**me manjis** - I ate/ I have eaten/ I was eating/ I did eat

The ending **-is** is used for any action that has happened or was happening in the past, so it can be translated into English in the different ways shown in the above examples. You will learn later on other forms of expression which avoid any such possible confusion in meaning. The **-is** ending is not the only way of expressing the past, but it is the easiest and most convenient.

## **Infinitives - Past and Present**

The present infinitive of verbs ends in **-ar** (bearing the accent on **-ar**):

**kredar** [kre-DARR] - to believe, **donar** [do-NARR] - to give.



The present tense ends in **-as**:

**me kredas** [KRE-das]- I believe, **me donas** [DO-nas] - I give.

The past infinitive ends in **-ir** (accented):

**kredir** [kre-DIRR] - to have believed, **donir** [do-NIRR] - to have given.

The past tense ends in **-is**:

**Me kredis** [KRE-dis] - I believed/ I have believed.

**Me donis** [DO-nis] - I gave/ I have given.

### ***Vortaro***

**ek** - out of

**fabrikerio** [fa-bri-KE-ryo] -  
factory

**fantomo** - ghost

**foresto** - forest

**heme** - at home

**malada** - ill/sick

**multa** - much/many

**nam** - for/since

**nova** - new

**pro** - because of

**pro ke** - because

**queris** - fetched

**restis** - stayed

**tro** - too (much)

**wiskio** - whisky

### ***Exempli***

I am. - **Me es.**

I was. - **Me esis.**

I have. - **Me havas.**

I had. - **Me havis.**

We are going, We went. - **Ni iras, Ni iris.**

He was going, He went. - **Ilu iris.** I go. - **Me iras.** I went. - **Me iris.**

I visited. - **Me vizitis.** He has visited. - **Ilu vizitis.**

He did eat. - **Ilu manjis.** I am eating. - **Me manjas.**

She works. - **Elu laboras.** She was working. - **Elu laboris.**

The dog drank. - **La hundo drinkis.**

He had a big cake. - **Ilu havis granda kuko.**

I also drank whisky. - **Me anke drinkis wiskio.**

They read many books. - **Li lektis multa libri.**

I went to the forest. - **Me iris a la foresto.**

I visited the factory. - **Me vizitis la fabrikerio.**

I went to the new pub. - **Me iris a la nova drinkerio.**

It was drinking whisky. - **Olu drinkis wiskio.**

We went into the garden. - **Ni iris aden la gardeno.**

I drank too much whisky. - **Me drinkis tro multa wiskio.**

The new teacher saw you. - **La nova instruktisto vidis vi.**

I walked out of the town. - **Me promenis ek la urbo.**

The doctor stayed at home. - **La mediko restis heme.**

My dog fetched the doctor. - **Mea hundo queris la mediko.**

In the forest I saw a ghost. - **En la foresto me vidis fantomo.**

She often worked in the factory. - **Elu ofte laboris en la fabrikerio.**

I was ill because of the whisky. - **Me esis malada pro la wiskio.**

But the doctor was also ill and he didn't come. - **Ma la mediko esis anke malada ed ilu ne venis.**

## **Vortaro**

**ante nun** - ago

**amiko** - friend

**dii** - days

**dum** - for

**facas** - do/does

**facila** - easy

**fine** - finally

**horo** - hour

**laute** - loudly (adverb)

**lernas** - learns

**letro** - letter

**linguo** - language

**nova** - new

**omna-die** - every day

**pose** - afterwards

**saluto** - greeting

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ja</b> - already            | <b>sempre</b> - always       |
| <b>kelka</b> - some            | <b>skribas</b> - writes      |
| <b>komencis</b> - began        | <b>studiar</b> - to study    |
| <b>komprenas</b> - understands | <b>texto</b> - text          |
| <b>kordiala</b> - cordial      | <b>traduko</b> - translation |
| <b>kurta</b> - short           | <b>trovas</b> - finds        |
| <b>lektas</b> - reads          | <b>ye</b> - at/in/on         |

## ***Letro***

### **Pri linguo internaciona (international language)**

Ka vu ja lernas la nova linguo internaciona?

Me komencis studiar olu ye kelka dii ante nun, e me trovas ke olu esas vere tre facila. Omna-die me lektas texto dum un horo; me sempre lektas laute, nam oportas ke ni tre ofte lektez laute.

Pose me facas kurta traduko e fine me skribas letro en la nova linguo.

Ka vu komprenas to?

Kun kordiala saluto,  
Vua amiko,

## ***Vortifado***

Here are some more useful affixes:

**-er-** - one who habitually does something, amateur:

**fumero** - smoker, **voyajero** - traveler. **-er-** is also used for animals or things characterized by an habitual action:

**reptero** - reptile, **remorkero** - tug (-boat)

**-ist-** - a person who does something professionally:

**koquisto** - a cook, **instruktisto** - a teacher, **skribisto** - a writer

**artista** - artist, **dentisto** - dentist, **fotografisto** - a professional photographer (while an amateur photographer is **fotografero**).

**-ist-** also indicates an adherent of a party or school of thought:

**Idisto** - Idist   **komunisto** - communist   **socialisto** - socialist  
**idealisto** - idealist

**-ism-** - system, doctrine, party:

**socialismo** - socialism

**Katolikismo** - Catholicism

**-an-** - member of a community, country, town or body:

**partisano** - partisan

**societano** - society member

**Parisano** - Parisian

**Kanadano** - Canadian

**-ier-** - who or what bears or is characterized by:

**pomiero** - apple-tree

**roziero** - rose-bush

**millioniero** - millionaire

**-ier-** also, in a few words, means *holder*:

**plumiero** - pen-holder

**sigariero** - cigar-holder

Note that all suffixes are added to the root of the word they are modifying, i.e. any grammatical ending is removed before adding the suffix:

**skribas** (writes), root = **skrib**, **skribisto** - writer

**polico** (police), root = **polic**, **policisto** - policeman

## Gender-specific Words

As we have seen before, living things can be made male or female by adding the suffixes **-ul-** or **-in-**. Originally there were no exceptions to this. However it was found convenient to include in the language a few very common words of one gender only:

- **patro** (father)
- **matro** (mother)
- **viro** (adult man)
- **muliero** (woman)

## **Vortifado**

Here are some more useful affixes:

**-id-** - denotes offspring: **Izraelido** - Israelite

**bo-** - in-law: **bopatro** - father-in-law

## **Vortaro**

**chambro** - room

**desneta** - dirty

**dormo-chambro** - bedroom

**facis** - made/did

**fakte** - in fact

**fratulo** - brother

**heme** - at home

**hemo** - a home

**kande** - when

**koquas** - cooks

**koquero** - cook

**laboris** - worked

**ledro** - leather

**ma** - but

**matro** - mother

**neta** - clean

**netigas** - cleans

**nia** - our

**nun** - now

**nur** - only

**plastiko** - plastic

**puero** - child (7 years to adolescence)

**restas** - stays

**shuo** - shoe

**shu-fabrikerio** - shoe factory

**tota** - all/whole

## **Mea Matro**

Mea matro restas heme. Elu laboras en la hemo. Elu netigas la chambri. Me es neta, ma mea fratulo es tre desneta. Do la matro ofte netigas nia dormo-chambro. Fakte la matro netigas la tota domo. Elu anke koquas por ni. Elu es tre bon koquero. Kande me esis puero, elu laboris en la shu-fabrikerio. Elu facis shui ek ledro e plastiko. Nun elu ne laboras en la fabrikerio ma elu laboras nur por ni. Elu es tre bona matro.

## **Adverbs**

An adverb is a word which describes how, when or where an action is, was, or will be done. For example *he worked* may be that *he worked + well* or *badly* or *often* or *quickly*, and so on.

In English most adverbs end in *-ly*, but not all. The equivalent ending in Ido is *-e*.

## Deriving Adverbs from Adjectives

All Ido adjectives can be made into adverbs by changing the adjectival *-a* ending to the adverbial *-e*:

**mala** - bad → **male** - badly

**rapida** - fast/rapid → **rapide** - rapidly

**danjeroza** - dangerous → **danjeroze** - dangerously

### Vortaro

**rapida** - fast

**ecelanta** - excellent

**ecelante** - excellently

**instruktar** - to teach

**instruktisto** - teacher

**amiko** - friend

**multa** - much

**multe** - a lot

**treno** - train

**koquar** - to cook

**koquisto** - (noun) cook

**kuko** - cake

### Exempli

He works well. - **Il**u laboras bone.

He teaches badly. - **Il**u instruktas male.

The child is good. - **La** puero esas bona.

The teacher is bad. - **La** instruktisto es mala.

The train went fast. - **La** treno iris rapide.

She cooks excellently. - **El**u koquas ecelante.

They like cakes a lot. - **Li** multe prizas kuki.

We saw the fast train. - **Ni** vidis la rapida treno.

The cook is excellent. - **La** koquisto es ecelanta.

He has a good many friends. - **Il**u havas multa amiki.

### Vortaro

**alumeto** - match

**monato** - month

**butiko** - shop  
**butikisto** - shopkeeper  
**certe** - certainly  
**chanco** - luck  
**desfortunoza** - unfortunate  
**fino** - end  
**helpas** - helps  
**hiere** - yesterday  
**kliento** - customer  
**kun** - with  
**matino** - morning  
**merkato** - market

**obliviis** [ob-LI-vyis] - forgot  
**pagas** - pays  
**paketo** - packet  
**pro** - because of  
**pro quo** - why  
**quon** - what  
**sempre** - always  
**servas** [SERR-vas] - serves  
**sigareto** - cigarette  
**vakanco** - holiday  
**vetero** - weather  
**ye** - at

### ***Konversado***

En la butiko (B=Butikisto, M=Mary)

B: Bon matino, Mary! Quon vu deziras?

M: Bon matino, Sioro Harris! Me deziras paketo de sigareto e buxo de alumeti por mea matro, ed anke botelo de lakto.

B: Ka vu pagas nun o ye la fino di la monato?

M: Me ne pagas nun. Me obliviis mea pekunio. Fakte, Peter havas olu, ed ilu es en la merkato. Ka Siorino Harris ne helpas vu hodie?

B: No, elu havas vakanco. Elu iris hiere a London.

M: Elu certe havas bona chanco. La vetero esas bela. Pro quo vu ne iris kun elu?

B: Pro la butiko. Me restas hike e servas la klienti.

M: Butikisti es tre desfortunoza.

B: Yes, ni sempre laboras.

## ***Lesson 6 - Sisesma Leciono***

### **Interrogative Pronouns**

For questions about *who* or *what*, Ido has a set of interrogative pronouns: **qua** - who, **qui** - plural who, **quo** - what.

**Qua regardas me?** - Who is looking at me?

**Qua amas il?** - Who loves him?

If you know that the *who* is more than one person, use **qui**:

**Qui regardas me?** - Who is looking at me?

**Qui amas il?** - Who loves him?

If the *who* could be a non-person or unknown thing, use **quo** to ask *what*:

**Quo esas en la buxo?** - What is in the box?

**Quo eventis?** - What happened?

Note in Ido it is not necessary to change the word order when making questions, though it is in English.

(English) *He is* becomes *Who is he?*

(Ido) **Il es** becomes **Qua il es?** (*Who he is?*)

### ***Exempli***

Who is he? - **Qua ilu esas?**

Who was ill? - **Qua esis malada?**

What is in the garden? - **Quo es en la gardeno?**

Who did George's work? - **Qua facis la laboro di George?**

Who loves the old horse? - **Qua amas la olda kavalo?**

What is eating my apples? - **Quo manjas mea pomi?**

Who came here with the dog? - **Qui venis hike kun la hundo?**

Who is learning Ido in this school? - **Qui lernas Ido en la skolo?**

Who went to the school with white mice? - **Qui iris a la skolo kun**



**blanka musi?**

Who visits the friends of the old shopkeeper? - **Qua vizitas la amiki di la olda butikisto?**

**Numerals**

**un** - one

**du** - two

**tri** - three

**quar** - four

**kin** - five

**sis** - six

**sep** - seven

**ok** - eight

**non** - nine

**dek** - ten

**Exempli**

I have ten cats. - **Me havas dek kati.**

I have one brother. - **Me havas un fratulo.**

Nine girls visited me. - **Non yunini vizitis me.**

My brother saw three birds. - **Mea fratulo vidis tri uceli.**

Who has two bottles of beer? - **Qua havas du boteli de biro?**

The dog is eating five cakes. - **La hundo manjas kin kuki.**

She is not buying six apples. - **Elu ne kompras sis pomi.**

We have only four clean shoes. - **Ni havas nur quar neta shui.**

Are seven flowers in the garden? - **Ka sep flori es en la gardeno?**

Mary's house hasn't got eight windows. - **La domo di Mary ne havas ok fenestri.**

**Vortifado**

**-ey-** (place or room devoted to some thing or action) is used in the construction of many common words:

**pregeyo** - oratory

**koqueyo** - kitchen (**koquas** - cooks)

**ombeyo** - cemetery

**kavaleyo** - stable (place for horses)

**hundeyo** - kennel (place for dogs)

**viteyo** - vineyard

as well as for others of a more general nature:

**lerneyo** - school-room   **lojeyo** - dwelling place

**dormeyo** - a sleeping place/dormitory

Since the meaning of this suffix is rather wide, there are special words where a distinction is required: **universitato**, **skolo**, etc., for **lerneyo** (place of learning); **katedralo**, **kirko**, etc., for **pregeyo** (place of worship).

### ***Vortifado***

**-uy-** (receptacle):

**inkuyo** - inkwell

**kafeuyo** - coffee-box

**teuyo** - tea-caddy

**sigaruyo** - cigar-box

NOTE: coffee-pot, tea-pot are **kafe-krucho**, **te-krucho**.

**-i-** (domain or sphere of action):

**dukio** - duchy

**komtio** - county

**episkopio** - bishopric

**-ed-** (the full of, amount corresponding to):

**bokedo** - mouthful

**pinchedo** - pinch   **glutedo** - gulp

### ***Vortaro***

**rezidas** - resides, dwells, lives

The following two words are more specific than **rezidas**:

**lojas** - lives for a limited time (in someone else's house etc.)

**habitas** - lives permanently (in one's own house etc.)

On lojas tempe (kurte) che altra persono od en gasteyo.

On habitas permanente en propra o fixa domo.

On habitas urbo, che amiko, parento, en apartamento, en chambro, e.c.

**laboras** - works

**trovas** - finds

**sidas** - sits

### ***Exempli***

The pub is your place of work. - **La drinkerio es vua laboreyo.**

The children are in the stable. - **La pueri es en la kavaleyo.**

My dog doesn't live in a kennel. - **Mea hundo ne habitas en hundeyo.**

We have a fish pond in our garden. - **Ni havas fisheyo en nia gardeno.**

The house has a beautiful kitchen. - **La domo havas bela koqueyo.**

The children eat in the dining hall. - **La yuni manjas en la manjeyo.**

She didn't find a sitting place (seat). - **Elu ne trovis sideyo.**

My house is the dwelling place of many mice. - **Mea domo esas la rezideyo di multa musu.**

They didn't find a drinking place for the horses. - **Li ne trovis drinkeyo por la kavali.**

They don't have a place to sleep (dormitory) in the school. - **Li ne havas dormeyo en la skolo.**

### **Extended Duration with Dum**

Note the following difference carefully.

**Me manjis dum la nokto.** - I ate during the night. (throughout

the whole night).

**Me manjis en la nokto.** - I ate during the night. (at one or more different times during the night).

## Or - od/o

Note that as with **ed/e**, **od** is generally used when the next word starts with a vowel, and **o** is used when it begins with a consonant.

## Vortifado - Adjektivu kun nuanci

- al-** (forms adjectives meaning *belonging to* or *relating to*):  
**universala** - universal, **racionala** - rational
- oz-** (means *full of, containing, rich in*): **poroza** - porous, **sabloza** - sandy, **kurajoza** - courageous, **famoza** - famous
- em-** (means *inclined to*): **babilema** - talkative, **ociema** - lazy, **laborema** - industrious
- ik-** (means *sick of, suffering from*): **ftiziiko** - consumptive, **artritiko** - arthritic, **alkoholiko** - alcoholic patient
- atr-** (means *like, similar to, -ish*): **sponjatra** - spongy, **haratra** - hair-like, **verdatra** - greenish
- e-** (means *having the appearance or color of*): **rozea** - rozy, pink, **violea** - violet (-colored), **musea** - mouse-colored

## Vortaro

|                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>armeo</b> - army              | <b>posdimezo</b> - afternoon   |
| <b>automobilo</b> - car          | <b>soldato</b> - soldier       |
| <b>biciklo</b> - bicycle         | <b>vespero</b> - evening       |
| <b>divenis</b> - became          | <b>ipsa</b> - self             |
| <b>dormeyo</b> - sleeping place  | <b>lito</b> - bed              |
| <b>konduktas</b> - drives        | <b>milito</b> - war            |
| <b>grandega</b> - enormous       | <b>nokto</b> - night           |
| <b>kamionisto</b> - truck driver | <b>o/od</b> - or               |
| <b>kamiono</b> - truck           | <b>pri</b> - about             |
| <b>pos</b> - after               | <b>dum</b> - during/throughout |
| <b>patro</b> - father            | <b>sen</b> - without           |

### **Mea Patro**

Mea patro esis soldato dum la milito. En la armeo ilu lernis pri automobili e kamioni. Ilu konduktis kamioni. Pos la milito ilu divenis kamionisto. Ilu nun konduktas grandega kamioni. Ilu konduktas dum la matino e dum la posdimezo. Ofte ilu konduktas kamioni dum la vespero e la nokto sen dormar. Kande me esis puero me ofte iris kun ilu en la kamiono. Ni vizitis multa urbi. Dum la nokto ni dormis sur lito en la kamiono od en dormejo por kamionisti. Me ipsa ne konduktas automobilo. Me es tro yuna. Me havas biciklo.

### **Vortaro**

|                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>aparas</b> - appears        | <b>printempo</b> - spring           |
| <b>brilas</b> - shines         | <b>tante</b> - so                   |
| <b>ca</b> - this               | <b>trovas</b> - finds               |
| <b>dop</b> - behind            | <b>ucelo</b> - bird                 |
| <b>desaparas</b> - disappears  | <b>uzas</b> - uses                  |
| <b>horizonto</b> - horizon     | <b>varma</b> - warm                 |
| <b>jorno</b> - day             | <b>venas</b> - comes                |
| <b>kantas</b> - sings          | <b>vintro</b> - winter              |
| <b>kolda</b> - cold            | <b>sama ... kam</b> - same ... with |
| <b>kovrilo</b> - blanket/cover | <b>quale</b> - as/like              |
| <b>lana</b> - woollen          | <b>somero</b> - summer              |
| <b>luno</b> - moon             | <b>stelo</b> - star                 |
| <b>nepluse</b> - no longer     | <b>suno</b> - sun                   |
| <b>plura</b> - several         |                                     |

### **Exempli**

What is here? - **Quo esas hike?**

Who lives here? - **Qua habitas hike?**

Where is my bed? - **Ube mea lito esas?**

Where is your cat? - **Ube vua kato es?**

What is in the truck? - **Quo es en la kamiono?**

Who (plural) are you? - **Qui vi esas?**

Who (plural) are they? - **Qui li es?**

Who has enormous shoes? - **Qua havas grandega shui?**

Who lives in the garden? - **Qua lojas en la gardeno?**

Who (plural) has the red bicycles? - **Qui havas la reda bicikli?**

### ***Exempli***

Four warm nights. - **Quar varma nokti.**

Nine brown birds. - **Non bruna uceli.**

After three evenings. - **Pos tri vesperi.**

Ten enormous mothers. - **Dek grandega matri.**

Six stars are shining. - **Sis steli brilas.**

Eight woollen blankets. - **Ok lana kovrili.**

The same seven blankets. - **La sama sep kovrili.**

Two sick soldiers lived here. - **Du malada soldati rezidis hike.**

Five horses slept in this bed. - **Kin kavali dormis en ca lito.**

One fierce old cat was under the bed. - **Un feroce olda kato esis sub la lito.**

### **The Family - La Familio [fa-MI-lyo]**

**avo** - grandparent

**avino** - grandmother

**avulo** - grandfather

**patro** - father

**matro** - mother

**genitoro** - parent

**parento** - relative

**spozo** - spouse

**spozino** - wife

**spozulo** - husband

**filio** [FI-lyo] - son/daughter

**filiino** [fi-li-I-no] - daughter

**filiulo** [fi-li-U-lo] - son

**gefili** [ge-FI-lyi] - son(s) and daughter(s)

**frato** - brother/sister

**fratino** - sister

**fratulo** - brother

**nepoto** - grandchild

**nepotino** - granddaughter

**nepotulo** - grandson

**onklo** - uncle/aunt

**onklino** - aunt

**onklulo** - uncle

**kuzo** - cousin

**kuzino** - cousin (female)

**kuzulo** - cousin (male)

**nevo** - nephew/niece

**nevino** - niece

**nevulo** - nephew

***Bona Nokto***

Dum la jorno la suno brilas. En la vespero la suno desaparas dop la horizonto. La uceli nepluse kantas. Li trovas dormeyo en la arbori e li dormas. La nokto venas. En la nokto la luno aparas e la steli brilas. En la nokto me iras a lito e lektas libro dum un horo ante dormar (before falling asleep). Me havas grandega lito qua es en mea dormo-chambro. Mea chambro ne es varma dum la printempo e me uzas kin kovrili. Dum la somero la vetero esas varma e mea chambro ne esas kolda. Me uzas nur un kovrilo. En la autuno la vetero divenas kolda. Me uzas plura kovrili. Me uzas sis lana kovrili. Dum la vintro la vetero es tante kolda ke me uzas dek kovrili, e mea du granda hundi dormas en la sama lito kam la mea (quale me).

## ***Lesson 7 - Sepesma Leciono***

### **Future Tense**

Verbs in the future tense refer to actions that will or shall happen.  
The ending for the future is **-os**:

**Me iros.** - I will go.

**Ni vidos.** - We shall see.

### ***Vortaro***

(Note that the verbs in this list are in the present tense.)

**armoro** - cupboard

**audas** - hears

**batas** - beats

**dansas** - dances

**dansisto** - dancer

**dop** - behind

**fumas** - smokes

**gustas** - tastes

**juas** - enjoys

**klimas** - climbs

**klimero** - climber

**kolino** - hill

**monto** - mountain

**morge** - tomorrow

**vilajo** - village

### ***Exempli***

I am, I was, I will be. - **Me esas, Me esis, Me esos.**

You have, You had, You will have. - **Vu havas, Vu havis, Vu havos.**

He is looking, He was looking, He will look. - **Il regardas, Ilu regardis, Ilu regardos.**

You dance well. - **Tu dansas bone.**

The car is big. - **La automobilo esas granda.**

I will beat you. - **Me batos vi.**

I will help him. - **Me helpas ilu. / Me helpas ad ilu.**

I am not smoking. - **Me ne fumas.**

Will you eat today? - **Ka vu manjos hodie?**



The climber will come. - **La klimero venos.**

Will we dance tomorrow? - **Ka ni dansos morge?**

I shall taste the cake. - **Me gustos la kuko.**

You will enjoy the beer. - **Tu juos la biro.**

The teacher was smoking. - **La instruktisto fumis.**

I shall become a dentist. - **Me divenos dentisto.**

The weather is warm today. - **La vetero es varma hodie.**

Shall we smoke a cigarette? - **Ka ni fumos sigareto?**

Philip's dog heard the girl. - **La hundo di Philip audis la yunino.**

The birds will sing tomorrow. - **La uceli kantos morge.**

The teacher did not hear them. - **La instruktisto ne audis li.**

He will not beat the small dog. - **Ilu ne batos la mikra hundo.**

The dancer will not dance today. - **La dansisto ne dansos hodie.**

He put the food in the cupboard. - **Ilu pozis la manjajo aden la armoro.**

The fat mouse will eat the apple. - **La grosa muso manjos la pomo.**

The pig will not sleep in my bed! - **La porko ne dormos en mea lito!**

The truck driver will drink the whisky. - **La kamionisto drinkos la wiskio.**

The ghost will not appear during the day. - **La fantomo ne aparos dum la jorno.**

The young climber helped the old soldier. - **La yuna klimero helpis (a) la olda soldato.**

She will not climb the hill behind the village. - **Elu ne klimos la kolino dop la vilajo.**

The climber will climb the mountain during the night. - **La klimero klimos la monto dum la nokto.**

## Cardinal Numerals

|                        |                                   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - <b>un</b>          | 21 - <b>duadek e un</b>           |
| 2 - <b>du</b>          | 22 - <b>duadek e du</b>           |
| 3 - <b>tri</b>         | 23 - <b>duadek e tri</b>          |
| 4 - <b>quar</b>        | 30 - <b>triadek</b>               |
| 5 - <b>kin</b>         | 40 - <b>quaradek</b>              |
| 6 - <b>sis</b>         | 50 - <b>kinadek</b>               |
| 7 - <b>sep</b>         | 60 - <b>sisadek</b>               |
| 8 - <b>ok</b>          | 70 - <b>sepadek</b>               |
| 9 - <b>non</b>         | 80 - <b>okadek</b>                |
| 10 - <b>dek</b>        | 90 - <b>nonadek</b>               |
| 11 - <b>dek e un</b>   | 99 - <b>nonadek e non</b>         |
| 12 - <b>dek e du</b>   | 100 - <b>cent</b>                 |
| 13 - <b>dek e tri</b>  | 101 - <b>cent e un</b>            |
| 14 - <b>dek e quar</b> | 124 - <b>cent e duadek e quar</b> |
| 15 - <b>dek e kin</b>  | 200 - <b>duacent</b>              |
| 16 - <b>dek e sis</b>  | 400 - <b>quaracent</b>            |
| 17 - <b>dek e sep</b>  | 1000 - <b>mil</b>                 |
| 18 - <b>dek e ok</b>   | 2000 - <b>duamil</b>              |
| 19 - <b>dek e non</b>  | 3700 - <b>triamil e sepacent</b>  |
| 20 - <b>duadek</b>     | 1,000,000 - <b>miliono</b>        |

Lesson 6 introduced the numerals 1-10. As you can see from the above examples, going past 10 is a matter of rebuilding with the first ten numerals. *Eleven* is **dek e un** (literally *ten and one*), *twelve* is **dek e du**, and so on up to *nineteen* (**dek e non**). *Twenty* - **duadek** is simply **dua** (two times) -**dek** (*ten*), i.e. *twenty*. *Thirty* is **tria-dek**, *forty* is **quara-dek**, and so on. *Forty one* (four times ten plus one) is **quaradek e un**, 556 (five times a hundred and five times ten and six) is **kinacent e kinadek e sis**.

## Vortaro

**amoras** - loves

**banano** - banana

**ca** - this (adjective)

**disko** - disc

**durstoza** - thirsty

**kultelo** - knife

**lampo** - lamp/light

**letro** - letter

**letro-portisto** - postman

**lia** - their

**forketo** - table fork

**fratino** - sister

**klaso** - class

**fratulo** - brother

**gorilo** - gorilla

**hungroza** - hungry

**kantisto** - singer

**infanto** - child (under 7)

**kopiuro** - copy

**kuliero** - spoon

**onklino** - aunt

**pantalono** - trousers

**pendas** - hangs

**per** - with/by

**plafono** - ceiling

**planko-sulo** - floor

**ta** - that

**tir-kesto** - drawer

**sua** - his/her/their own

### **Note**

1. **Amoras** means *loves* (the affection a man and a woman feel for each other). There is also **amas** which is the affection a mother feels for her child, or a sister for a brother etc.
2. **Per** means *with* in the sense of *by means of*: **Il u batis me per bastono**. - He beat me with a stick. It should not be confused with **kun** which means *with* in the sense of *in the company of*: **Il u iris kun elu a la parko**. - He went with her to the park. Sometimes English *with* corresponds to some other Ido preposition: **Havez pacienteso a me**. - Have patience *with* me.
3. **Pantalono** - trousers is a singular word in Ido because it constitutes only one thing. **Pantaloni** would be pairs of trousers. Also **binoklo** - a pair of glasses

### **Exempli**

Twenty horses. - **Duadek kavali**.

Thirty children. - **Triadek infanti**.

A hundred knives. - **Cent kulteli**.

Fifty-eight spoons. - **Kinadek e ok kulieri**.

Sixty-three copies. - **Sisadek e tri kopiuri**.

Ninty-one gorillas. - **Nonadek e un gorili**.

My mother has sixteen cats. - **Mea matro havas dek e sis kati**.

Their teacher has eighty discs. - **Lia instruktisto havas okadek diski.**

My aunt has seventy-one flowers. - **Mea onklino havas sepadek e un flori.**

Tomorrow I'll write twelve letters. - **Morge me skribos dek e du letri.**

My aunt's gorilla ate fifteen bananas. - **La gorilo di mea onklino manjis dek e kin banani.**

The thirty soldiers slept on the floor. - **La triadek soldati dormis sur la planko-sulo.**

Thirty-six lamps hung from the ceiling. - **Triadek e sis lampi pendis de la plafono.**

Seventy-six thirsty postmen work in that town. - **En ta urbo laboras sepadek e sis durstoza letro-portisti.**

The forty knives were in the drawer of this table. - **La quaradek kulteli esis en la tir-kesto di ca tablo.**

My young sister found a hundred and two forks in the cupboard. - **Mea yuna fratino trovis cent e du forketi en la armoro.**

The 999 hungry children beat the table with their spoons. - **La nonacent e nonadek e non hungroza infanti batis la tablo per sua kulieri.**

The two singers sold 200,000 copies of their new disc, "I love you". - **La 2 kantisti vendis duacenta-mil kopiuri de sua nova disko, "Me amoras tu".**

### **Vortifado**

**-il-** (instrument for doing the action shown in the root word):

**pektas** - combs : **pektilo** - a comb

**skribas** - writes : **skribilo** - something to write with; pen, pencil, etc.

**brozas** - brushes : **brozilo** - a brush

**plugas** - ploughs : **plugilo** - a plough

**pafas** - shoots : **pafilo** - a fire-arm

**baras** - bars : **barilo** - barrier

**fotografas** - photographs : **fotografilo** - camera

Many special names of instruments exist: **klefo** - key, **martelo** - hammer. Verbs can be formed from these names by compounding them with the root **-ag** to do, act:

**klefagar** - to lock, **martelagar** - to hammer

### **Vortaro**

**mixas** - mixes

**tranchas** - cuts

**brozas** - brushes

**fotografas** - photographs

**ludas** - plays

**apertas** - opens

**natas** - swims

Note that suffixes can often be used to make an approximate word when the correct one is not known.

### **Vortaro**

knife - **tranchilo**

a mixer - **mixilo**

brush - **brotilo**

camera - **fotografilo**

fish's fins - **natili**

toy - **ludilo**

door handle - **apertilo**

frogman's flippers - **natili**

### **Vortaro**

**amiko** - friend

**chokolado** - chocolate

**demandis** - asked

**donacajo** - present (gift)

**hiere** - yesterday

**ja** - already

**komprendende** - of course

**kunportas** - brings

**ludilo** - toy

**nasko-dio** - birthday

**nia** - our

**omna** - all

**peco** - piece

**partio** [PARR-tyo] - party

**prenez!** - take!

**saluto!** - hello!/hi!

**sukrajo** - a sweet

**til** - until

**tua** - your

**vere** - really

**yaro** - year

**Quante tu evas?** - How old are you?

**Me evas sep yari.** - I'm seven

## ***Konversado***

Sur la strado (A=Alan, B=Bob)

A: Saluto, Bob! Quale tu standas?

B: Saluto, Alan! Hodie esas mea nasko-dio [NAS-ko-DI-o].

A: Vere? Quante tu evas?

B: Me evas non yari. Me havis multa ludili: Kamiono, automobilo, soldati e sukraji. Morge me havos mea partio. Ka tu venos? Mea matro ja demandis a tua matro.

A: Ka mea matro dicis *yes*?

B: Komprenende!

A: Qui venas a la partio?

B: Omna nia amiki. Li kunportos donacaji. Yen, prenez sukrajo e peco de chokolado!

A: Danko.

B: Til la partio.

A: Til la partio.

## ***General Questions (Answer in Ido)***

### ***Note***

**Quakolora?** - What color? **Ube?** - Where? **Che vu** - At your house, **posdimezo** - afternoon, **vespero** - evening, **Qua?** - Who?, **Quo?** - What?

1. Quakolora es la pordo? → Olu es blanka quale nivo (as white as snow).
2. Ube vu dormas? → En la lito kun mea amorata (loved) spozino.
3. Ka vu dormas dum la jorno? → No, kompreneble ne. Me sempre devas laborar.
4. Ka vu havas blua automobilo? → Yes, nam la blua esis chipa.
5. Ka vu drinkas biro? → No, me esas anti-alkoholisto.

6. Ka vu havas fisheyo che vu? → Fisheyo che me? Ho, no, ridinde no.
7. Ka vu promenar en la nokto? → Promenar? No, me pavoras de la nokto.
8. Ka vu laboras en la posdimezo? → Yes, komprenende. Qua laboras por me?
9. Ka vu drinkas kafeo en la matino? → Yes, matine kafeo komplete vekigas me.
10. Quakolora es kafeo? → Generale olu es nigra ma bruna kande kun lakto.
11. Ka vu iras a la skolo en la vespero? → No, me ne prizas skoli.
12. Quo es sur la tablo? → Mea libri. Me lektas libri pri vasta temi.
13. Qua loĵas ĉe vu? → Nulu loĵas ĉe me. Mea domo es tre mikra.
14. Ube vu habitas? → En la strado di Ben-Yehuda.
15. Ka vu havas fratino? → Yes, me havas un fratino.

## Forms of Transport

**aero-navo** - airship  
**aeroplano** - aeroplane  
**auto(mobilo)** - car  
**balonego** - balloon  
**batelo** - boat  
**biciklo** - bicycle  
**dilijenco** - stage coach  
**furgono** - van  
**fuzeo** - rocket  
**helikoptero** - helicopter

**kamiono** - truck  
**lokomotivo** - locomotive  
**motorbiciklo** - motorbike  
**navo** - ship  
**omnibuso** - bus  
**spaco-navo** - spaceship  
**submerso-navo** - submarine  
**treno** - train  
**vagono** - (railway) carriage

## Lesson 8 - Okesma Leciono

### Ordinal Numerals

In English, ordinal numerals are slightly irregular. From *one* we get *first*, from *two* - *second*, *three* - *third*, *four* - *fourth*, and so on. In Ido all ordinal numerals are regular: **-esma** is added to the cardinal numeral:

first - **un + esma = unesma** (also written **1ma**)

second - **duesma (2ma)**

third - **triesma (3ma)**

twentieth - **duadekesma (20ma)**

144th - **cent e quaradek e quaresma (144ma)**

### Months - Monati

In Ido, months are not capitalized:

**januaro** [ja-nu-A-rro] - January

**februaro** [fe-bru-A-rro] - February

**marto** [MARR-to] - March

**aprilo** [a-PRI-lo] - April

**mayo** [MA-yo] - May

**junio** [JU-nyo] - June

**julio** [JU-lyo] - July

**agosto** [a-GOS-to] - August

**septembro** [sep-TEM-bro] - September

**oktobro** [ok-TO-bro] - October

**novembro** [no-VEM-bro] - November

**decembro** [de-CEM-bro] - December



## Dates - Dati

When referring to dates, the word for *of* - **di** - may be omitted, although the preferred style is to leave it in: **la quaresma (di) mayo** - The fourth of May.

With dates **esas** can mean *it is*. There is no need for an additional word for *it*: **Esas la dek e nonesma (di) junio**. - It's the nineteenth of June.

**Ye** is used for *on* in expressions of time: **Ye la duadek e okesma di februaro** - on the 28th of February.

## Exempli

It is the fifth of March. - **Es la kinesma di marto**. It is the second of January. - **Es la duesma di januaro**. Yesterday it was the fifth of July. - **Hiere esis la kinesma di julio**.

He was not here on the fifth of July. - **Ilu ne esis hike ye la kinesma di julio**.

It will be the eighth of May tomorrow. - **Esos morge la okesma di mayo**.

It will be the ninth of June tomorrow. - **Esos la nonesma di junio morge**.

It was the seventh of August yesterday. - **Esis la sepesma di agosto hiere**.

My birthday was on the first of October. - **Mea nasko-dio esis ye la unesma di oktobro**.

The letter came on the first of February. - **La letro venis ye la unesma di februaro**.

The sun shone on the twentieth of November. - **La suno brilis ye la duadekesma di novembro**.

The boys will not work on the fourth of April. - **La yunuli ne laboros ye la quaresma di aprilo**.

My mother will come on the tenth of September. - **Mea matro venos ye la dekesma di septembro**.

## **Vortifado**

**-eri-** (establishment where something is made or done, implied by the root, but not necessarily the process of manufacturing or producing it):

**drinkerio** - public house

**agenterio** - agency (**agento** - an agent)

**fabrikerio** - factory (**fabrikas** - manufactures)

**lakterio** - dairy

**restorerio** - restaurant

**rafinerio** - refinery

**chapelerio** - hat factory

**distilerio** - distillery

**Note:** **-eri-** and **-ey-** are sometimes confused. Use **-eri-** for an establishment (such as a restaurant), but use **-ey-** for a place or location (such as a kitchen), possibly within some other establishment:

**imprimas** - prints (verb)

**imprimerio** - printing works (including offices etc)

**imprimeyo** - the part of the works, the place/room/shop where the printing takes place

## **Clothes - Vesti**

**boto** - boot

**ganto** - glove

**kalzego** - tights/pantyhose (US)

**kalzeto** - sock

**kalzo** - stocking

**robo** - dress

**sharpo** [SHARR-po]- scarf

**shuo** - shoe

**chapelo** - hat

**jaketo** - (woman's) coat

**kamizo** - shirt

**pantalono** - trousers

**subvesto** - under garment

**surtuto** [surr-TU-to] - (long)coat

**vestono** - (man's) jacket

**jupo** - skirt

**jileto** - waistcoat

**korsajo** [korr-SA-jo] - blouse

**trikoturo** - pullover

**manu-sako** [MA-nu-SA-ko] - handbag

**subjupo** [SUB-JU-po] - slip

**kravato** - tie  
**paltoto** - (over)coat

**kalsono** -  
 knickers/pants/(US)briefs/panties

## Interrogative Pronouns as Objects with the Accusative

The interrogative pronouns we learned earlier are: **Qua?** - Who, **Qui?** - Who (plural)?, **Quo?** - What?

**Qua manjas?** - Who is eating?

**Qui venis?** - Who (plural) came?

**Quo facas la bruiso?** - What is making the noise?

In these examples the *who* or *what* is doing the action indicated by the verb. However, sometimes we want to know about the *who* or *what* that is on the receiving end of the action:

Whom do you see?

What are you eating?

In these two sentences the *you* is doing the action. In the first one the *whom* is being seen, and in the second the *what* is being eaten.

Just as *who* in English takes an ending and becomes *whom*, so **qua** and **qui** take an ending in Ido and become **quan** and **quin**. **Quo** follows the same pattern as **quan** and **quin**, and becomes **quon**. The use of the accusative ending **-n** is to make it absolutely clear who is receiving the action.

**La viro quan vu vidis.** - The man whom you saw.

**Quin vu vidas?** - Whom (plural) do you see?

**Quon ilu dicis?** - What did he say?

**Me ne audis (to) quon ilu dicis.** - I did not hear what he said.

Note that in this construction the English word order changes, and *do* or *does* may be inserted, but the Ido word order remains the same:

English: *You see* becomes *Whom do you see?* or *What do you see?* *You are eating* becomes *What are you eating?*

Ido: **Vu vidas** becomes **Quan vu vidas?** or **Quon vu vidas?**  
**Tu manjas** becomes **Quon tu manjas?**

### ***Exempli***

Who sees me? - **Qua vidas me?**

Whom do I see? - **Quan me vidas?**

Who can see him? - **Qua povas vidar ilu?**

Whom can he see? - **Quan ilu povas vidar?**

What do you like? - **Quon vu prizas?**

What ate my shoes? - **Quo manjis mea shui?**

What is in the box? - **Quo esas en la buxo?**

What drank the milk? - **Quo drinkis la lakto?**

What are you cooking? - **Quon vu koquas?**

What is in the house? - **Quo esas en la domo?**

Who is eating the fish? - **Qua manjas la fisho?**

Who is eating the meat? - **Qua manjas la karno?**

Whom is the fish eating? - **Quan la fisho manjas?**

What is the bird eating? - **Quon la ucelo manjas?**

What did you give to them? - **Quon vu donis a li?**

What did you give to John? - **Quon vu donis a John?**

Who (plural) likes apples? - **Qui prizas pomi?**

Who (plural) likes the birds? - **Qui prizas la uceli?**

Whom (plural) have they seen? - **Quin li vidis?**

Whom (plural) did my friends see? - **Quin mea amiki vidis?**

### ***Vortaro***

**adreso** - address

**antea** - previous

**apud** - next to

**atesto** - certificate

**kom** - as

**klerko** - clerk

**koquisto** - cook

**laboro** - work

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>bezonas</b> - needs                       | <b>lando</b> - country/land                  |
| <b>biblioteko</b> [bi-blyo-TE-ko] - library  | <b>listo</b> - list                          |
| <b>bone</b> - well                           | <b>livis</b> - left (verb)                   |
| <b>brulis</b> - burnt                        | <b>naskis</b> - was born                     |
| <b>centro</b> - centre                       | <b>onklulo</b> - uncle                       |
| <b>cinemo</b> - cinema                       | <b>rejala</b> - royal                        |
| <b>dil = di la</b> - of the                  | <b>evar</b> - to be aged                     |
| <b>direte</b> - directly                     | <b>serchas</b> [SERR-chas] - looks for       |
| <b>drinkerio</b> [drin-KE-ryo] - pub         | <b>restorerio</b> - restaurant               |
| <b>eventis</b> - happened                    | <b>staciono</b> - station                    |
| <b>emplojo-agenterio</b> - employment agency | <b>tota</b> - all/ the whole                 |
| <b>fakte</b> - in fact                       | <b>vartez!</b> - wait!                       |
| <b>homo</b> - person                         | <b>ye</b> - at/in/on a precise place or time |
| <b>hotelo</b> - hotel                        | <b>fairo</b> [fa-I-ro] - fire                |
| <b>hotelestro</b> - hotel manager            | <b>quanta?</b> - how many? (adjective)       |
| <b>incendio</b> - fire                       | <b>quante?</b> - how many? (adverb)          |
| <b>incendio-domo</b> - fire station          |  |

### Notes

1. **Incendio** is a destructive fire, deliberate or accidental.  
**Fairo** is fire in general, the sort found in a home fireplace.
2. **Konocas** is *knows* in the sense of *being acquainted with*, and is used for *knowing* a person or a place: **Me konocas Mary. Savas** is used for *knowing* a fact: **Me savas ke ilu es stupida.**
3. **Evar** is *to be so many years old, to be aged so many years* as in **Me evas 51 (kinadek-e-un) yari.** - I am 51 years old.
4. **quanta?** (adjective) - how many/much?, **quante?** (adverb) - how many/much?  
**Quanta homi mortis?** - How many people have died?  
**Quante to kustas?** - How much does this cost?  
**Quante vu evas?** - How old are you?

**Konversado**

En la employo-agenterio (K=Klerko, A=Albert)

K: Bon jorno, Sioro.

A: Bon jorno, Sioro. Me nomesas Albert Smith. Me serchas laboro kom koquisto. Yen mea atesti.

K: Hm. Albert Smith. Yes. Quo es vua adreso?

A: Me habitas ye kin, Couturat Strado.

K: Hm, yes. Quante vu evas?

A: Me evas triadek e sis yari.

K: Ed ube vu naskis? En ca lando?

A: Yes, me naskis en London.

K: Hm, yes. Ka vu havas familio?

A: Yes, me havas spozino e tri infanti. Mea onklulo anke lojas en la domo kun ni.

K: Hm, yes. Pro quo vu livis vua antea laboro?

A: Incendio eventis en la koqueyo e la restorerio brulis. Fakte la tota strado brulis.

K: Hm, hm, yes. Vartez! Me serchos laboro por vu en mea listi. Ha, yes! Ka vu konocas la Rejala Hotelo? La hotelestro bezonas bona koquisto.

A: No, me ne konocas ol.

K: Hm. Ka vu konocas la centro dil urbo?

A: Me nur konocas la cinemo, la butiki, la biblioteko, e la drinkerii.

K: Ka vu konocas Nova Strado? La staciono es en Nova Strado.

A: Yes.

K: Bone, en ta strado esas la Rejala Hotelo. Olu esas direkte apud la incendio-domo.

**Questioni**

1. Quale la koquistu nomesas? → Ilu nomesas Albert Smith.
2. Ube ilu esas? → Ilu esas en la employo-agenterio.
3. Quon ilu serchas? → Ilu serchas laboro kom koquistu.
4. Qua parolas ad Albert? → La klerko ibe.
5. Ube Albert habitas? → Ilu habitas ye kin, Couturat Strado.
6. Quante ilu evas? → Ilu evas triadek e sis yari.
7. Ube ilu naskis? → Ilu naskis en London.
8. Albert havas quanta infanti? → Ilu havas tri infanti.
9. Quanta homi rezidas che Albert? → Sis homi rezidas ibe.
10. Quo eventis en la koqueyo dil restorerio? → Incendio eventis.
11. Kad Albert konocas la Rejala Hotelo? → No, ilu ne konocas.
12. Qua bezonas bona koquistu? → La hotelestro di la Rejala Hotelo.
13. Quon ilu konocas en la centro dil urbo? → La cinemo, la butiki e.c.
14. Ube la staciono es? → Olu esas en Nova Strado.
15. Quo es direte apud la Rejala Hotelo? → La incendio-domo esas ibe.

## People - Homi

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>viro</b> - man (adult male)                   | <b>geyuni</b> - young persons (male and female) |
| <b>muliero</b> - woman (adult female)            | <b>puero</b> - child (7 to adolescence)         |
| <b>homo</b> - human being/person                 | <b>puerino</b> - small girl                     |
| <b>homino</b> - female person                    | <b>puerulo</b> - small boy                      |
| <b>homulo</b> - male person                      | <b>infanto</b> - infant (up to 7 years)         |
| <b>yuno</b> - young person (adolescence upwards) | <b>infantino</b> - infant girl                  |
| <b>yunino</b> - young person (female)            | <b>infantulo</b> - infant boy                   |
| <b>yunulo</b> - young person (male)              | <b>infanteto</b> - baby                         |

## Lesson 9 - Nonesma Leciono

### Infinitives

Here are some examples of English verb infinitives: to eat, to sing, to clean. English uses two words, *to* + whatever the verb happens to be. Ido, however, uses only one word and indicates the infinitive by the ending **-ar**: **manjar** (manJAR) - to eat, **kantar** (kanTAR) - to sing, **netigar** (netiGAR) - to clean.

### Hidden Infinitives

Note that English does not always use the full infinitive, occasionally dropping the *to*:

- *I must go, I can go*, logically speaking should be *I must to go, I can to go*.
- In Ido, *I must (to) go*, **me mustas irar** and *I can (to) go*, **me povas irar**, are on the same pattern as *I want to go*, **me volas irar**, and *I try to go*, **me esforcas irar**.

### Three Types of Infinitives

All three types of infinitive - present, past, and future, have the accent or stress on the last syllable.

The *present infinitive* of verbs ends in **-ar** (accented): **kredar** [kre-DARR] - to believe; **donar** [do-NARR] - to give

The present tense ends in **-as** (not accented): **Me kredas** [KRE-das]. - I believe. **Me donas** [DO-nas]. - I give.

The *past infinitive* ends in **-ir** (accented): **kredir** [kre-DIRR] - to have believed; **donir** [do-NIRR] - to have given

The past tense ends in **-is** (not accented): **Me kredis** [KRE-dis]. - I believed. / I have believed. **Me donis** [DO-nis]. - I gave. / I have given.

The *future infinitive* of verbs ends in **-or**: **kredor** [kre-DORR] - to be about to believe, **donor** [do-NOR] - to be about to give

The future tense ends in **-os** (not accented): **Me kredos** [KRE-



dos]. - I shall believe. **Me donos** [DO-nos]. - I shall give.

### **Common Mistakes**

You cannot have two **-s** ending verbs together, such as **El mustas iras**, or **Il ne povis venas**. The second verb in such two-verb constructions must be an infinitive:

**Elu mustas irar. Ilu ne povis venar.**

Avoid the temptation to use **a** or **ad** with an infinitive, like the *to* in English:

**El volas ad iras** or **El volas ad irar** is nonsense.

The *to* of *She wants to go* is already conveyed by the **-ar** ending.

On rare occasions **por** may be used for *to* where it really means *in order to*: **Me laboras por vivar**. - I work (in order) to live.

However this **por** construction is not included in the following examples.

### **Vortaro**

|  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <b>darfar</b> - to be allowed to (may) | <b>povar</b> - to be able to (can) |
| <b>esar</b> - to be                    | <b>prizar</b> - to like            |
| <b>esforcar</b> - to try               | <b>regardas</b> - to look at       |
| <b>komprar</b> - to buy                | <b>savar</b> - to know             |
| <b>konduktar</b> - to drive            | <b>televiziono</b> - television    |
| <b>mustar</b> - to have to (must)      | <b>volar</b> - to want to/wish to  |

### **Exempli**

I must go. - **Me mustas irar.**

You must come. - **Vu mustas venar.**

I want to know. - **Me volas savar.**

He cannot cook. - **Ilu ne povas koquar.**

He wants to know. - **Ilu volas savar.**

He must be good. - **Ilu mustas esar bona.**

He may have the dog. - **Ilu darfás havar la hundo.**

I can drive a truck. - **Me povas konduktar kamiono.**

The doctor can't come. - **La mediko ne povas venar.**

My uncle wants to eat. - **Mea onklulo volas manjar.**

You may eat the apples. - **Vi darfás manjar la pomi.**

My sister likes to sing. - **Mea fratino prizas kantar.**

She is allowed to buy it. - **Elu darfás komprar ol.**

I tried to cook the meat. - **Me esforcis koquar la karno.**

I like to visit my sister. - **Me prizas vizitar mea fratino.**

I will try to write to you. - **Me esforcos skribar a tu.**

May he watch the television? - **Kad ilu darfás regardar la televiziono?**

The youth wants to buy this car. - **La yunulo volas komprar ca automobilo.**

They are trying to watch television. - **Li esforcas regardar la televiziono.**

We are not allowed to visit the sick boy/girl. - **Ni ne darfás vizitar la malada yuno.**

## **Vortaro**

**an** - at, on

**arivar** - to arrive

**berjero** - armchair

**binoklo** - spectacles

**chefa** - main/chief

**chino** - Chinaman

**dineo** - dinner

**agar** - to do

**faïro** [fa-I-ro] - fire

**filiino** - daughter

**filiulo** - son

**formulo** - formula

**romano** - novel

**sempre** - always

**trans** - across

**vere** - really

**vers** - towards

**viro** - man

**ludar** - to play

**detektivo** - detective

**komfortoza** - comfortable

**du kloki** - two o'clock

**misterioza** - mysterious

**pedbalono** - football

**forsar** - to force  
**furioza** - furious  
**ganar** - to win  
**ibe** - there  
**ilua** - his  
**kande** - when  
**karto** - card  
**lasta** - last  
**longa** - long  
**lore** - then  
**manuo** - hand  
**nam** - for  
**nivo** - snow  
**quale** - as

**pistolo** - pistol  
**sekreta** - secret  
**sidar** - to be sitting  
**siorino** - Mrs.  
**sideskar** - to sit down  
**de tempo a tempo** - from time to time  
**rakonto** - talk  
**vestibulo** - hall  
**sun-binoklo** - sun glasses  
**tamen** - however  
**cirkum** - about  
**sua** - his/her/their own  
**dil = di la** - of the

### ***Rakonto por Infanti***

Hiere pos dineo me lektis romano a mea filiino qua evas dek yari.

Mea filiulo ne esis ibe. Ilu evas dek-e-quar yari e preferas ludar pedbalono kun sua amiki kam (than/to) askoltar (listening to) la romano.

Yen parto dil romano:

Esis kolda nokto en la vintro e Siorino Gato esis en lito sub multa varma kovrili. Tamen en la koqueyo la lampo brilis. Ibe, Henriko la filiulo di Siorino Gato, e la tri detektivi gardis sekreta formulo (formula).

Henriko e Konor sidis an la tablo.

Li ludis karti kun Adolfus, grosa gorilo qua portis(wore) sun-binoklo.

De tempo a tempo Henriko manjis banano e Konor e la gorilo drinkis biro.

Henriko esis furioza, nam, quale sempre, la gorilo ganis.

La lasta detektivo qua esis magra chino e qua nomesis Wong, dormis en komfortoza berjero avan la fairo. Ma ye cirkum du kloki en la matino, misterioza viro venis trans la nivo vers la domo. Ilu forsis la chefa pordo, iris trans la longa vestibulo e

lore apertis la pordo dil koqueyo. En sua manuo ilu havis pistolo.

### **Questioni**

1. Ka la suno brilis? → No, esis kolda nokto.
2. Ube Siorino Gato esis? → Elu esis en lito sub multa varma kovrili.
3. Ube esis Henriko e Konor? → Li esis en la koqueyo.
4. Quon la detektivi gardis? → Li gardis sekreta formulo.
5. Quon li ludis? → Du de li ludis karti.
6. Quo esis Adolfus? → Lu esis grosa gorilo.
7. Qua portis (wore) sun-binoklo? → Adolfus, grosa gorilo, portis olu.
8. Quon Henriko manjis de tempo a tempo? → Ilu manjis banano.
9. Qui drinkis biro? → Konor ed Adolfus.
10. Pro quo Henriko esis furioza? → Nam ilu perdis la ludo.
11. Quale la chino nomesis? → Lu nomesis Wong.
12. Quon Wong agis? → Lu dormis.
13. Ube Wong esis? → Lu esis en komfortoza berjero avan la fairo.
14. Kande la misterioza viro arivis? → Ye cirkum du kloki en la matino.
15. Quale la viro venis en la domo? → Ilu forsis la chefa pordo.
16. Quon ilu havis en sua manuo? → Ilu havis pistolo en sua manuo.

### **Titles**

Abbreviations for the following titles are shown in parentheses. Note that the abbreviations are used without punctuation: **Sro Smith**, not **Sro. Smith**.

(1) **Sioro (Sro)** - Mr/Mrs/Miss/Master/Sir/Madam. This can be used to address either a man or a woman, married or single, irrespective of age. For example in a business letter:

**Estimata Sioro** - Dear Sir/Madam

(2) **Siorulo (S-ulo)** - Mr/Master/Sir. In practice this is not often used, **Sioro** being sufficient.

(3) **Siorino (S-ino)** - Mrs/Miss/Madam

In practice **Sioro** is not often used for women, **Siorino** being preferred. This is partly as a compliment to the female gender and partly to help distinguish between different members of the same family: **Sro e S-ino Smith** - Mr. and Mrs. Smith

Any woman has the right to be addressed as **Sioro**, should she so desire it. Note that **Siorino** can refer to both married and single women.

(4) **Damzelo (Dzlo)** - Miss/ young lady:

Should circumstances require it, an unmarried lady may be addressed as **damzelo**: **Damzelo Jones, Yen S-ino e Dzlo Smith** - Here are Mrs. and Miss Smith. **La damzelo (qua esas) ibe** - The young lady over there.

(5) **Damo** - This cannot be used as a title to address somebody. It is a noun referring to a married or widowed woman: **La damo ibe** - The lady over there.

### **Vortifado**

**des-** You can make the direct opposite of the root word with this prefix, usually when no specific word for the concept exists: For example:

**facila** - easy : **desfacila** - difficult

**neta** - clean : **desneta** - dirty

**honoro** - honour : **deshonoro** - dishonour

**ordino** - order : **desordino** - disorder

**fortuno** - fortune : **desfortuno** - misfortune

**helpo** - help : **deshelpo** - hindrance

When you don't know the direct opposite of the root word, you can make:

**bona** - good : **desbona** - bad (**mala**)

**bela** - beautiful : **desbela** - ugly (**leda**)

But you don't usually have to make the opposite words when they already exist, unless for the rhetorical purposes.

**bona** - good : **mala** - bad

**bela** - beautiful : **leda** - ugly

**freque** - frequently : **rare** - rarely

**harda** - hard : **mola** - soft

**chipa** - cheap : **chera** - expensive

**forta** - strong : **febla** - weak

**richa** - rich : **povra** - poor

### ***Vortaro***

**chipa** - cheap

**freque** - frequently

**forta** - strong

**harda** - hard

**richa** - rich

**fortuno** - fortune

**helpo** - help

**honoro** - honor

**neta** - clean

**ordino** - order

### ***Exempli***

From the above vocabulary you can make words for the following (already existing words for a meaning are shown in parentheses):

expensive - **deschipa** (**chera**)

rarely - **desfreque** (**rare**)

weak - **desforta** (**febla**)

soft - **desharda** (**mola**)

poor - **desricha** (**povra**)

misfortune - **desfortuno**

hindrance - **deshelpo**

dishonour - **deshonoro**

dirty - **desneta** (**sordida**)

disorder - **desordino**

## In the House - En la domo

The following list is for reference, not required for memorization.

**avana-chambro** - front room, → **avan-chambro** - somewhere in front of a room

**pordo** - door, **avana-pordo** - front door, → **avan-pordo** - somewhere in front of a door

**-chambro** - room, **balno-chambro** - bathroom, **dopa-chambro** - back room, **manjo-chambro** - dining room

**dopa-pordo** - back door, **dopa-dormo-chambro** - back bedroom, **dopa-eskalero** - back stairs/staircase

**fenco** - fence, **fenestro** - window, **fluro** - landing

**gardeno** - garden, **garden-pordo** - gate

**grado** - step, **koqueyo** - kitchen, **latrino** - toilet (fixture)

**moblo** - piece of furniture, **plafono** - ceiling

**planko-sulo** - floor, **salono** - parlour/ sitting room

**tekto** - roof, **teraso** - terrace, **vestibulo** - hall

## The Human Body - La Homala Korpo

The following list is for reference, not required for memorization.

head - **kapo**, hair (single strand) - **haro**, hair (collective) - **hararo**

forehead - **fronto**, eye - **okulo**, eyebrow - **brovo**, ear - **orelo**, nose - **nazo**

cheek - **vango**, beard - **barbo**, lip - **labio**, moustache - **labio-barbo** [LA-byo-BARR-bo]

mouth - **boko**, tooth - **dento**, tongue - **lango**,

neck - **kolo**, shoulder - **shultro**, chest - **pektoro**, back - **dorso**

breast - **mamo**, belly - **ventro**, waist - **tayo**, hip - **hancho**

muscle - **muskulo**, bone - **osto**, skin - **pelo**

arm - **brakio**, upper arm - **dopa-brakio** [DO-pa-BRA-kyo],

elbow - **kudo**

forearm - **avana-brakio** [a-VA-na-BRA-kyo], wrist - **karpō**,  
hand - **manuo**

thumb - **polexo**, finger - **figro**

leg - **gambo**, thigh - **kruro**, knee - **genuo**, shin - **tibio**, calf -  
**suro**

ankle - **pedo-kolo**, foot - **pedo**, heel - **talono**, sole - **plando**, big  
toe - **haluxo**, toe - **ped-fingro**



## ***Lesson 10 - Dekesma Leciono***

### **Possessive Adjectives**

Possessive adjectives are the same as the personal pronouns, except that the adjectival ending **-a** is added. (See also note below.)

**mea** - my/mine

**tua** - thy/thine

**vua** - your/yours (belonging to one person)

**lua** - his/her/hers/its

When necessary use:

**ilua** - his

**elua** - her/hers

**olua** - its

**sua** - his own/her own/its own/their own

**nia** - our/ours

**via** - your/yours (more than one person)

**lia** - their/theirs

When necessary use:

**ilia** - their (belonging to men)

**elia** - their (belonging to women)

**olia** - their (belonging to things)

Note that **me** gives **mea**, **tu** gives **tua**, but **il**, **el**, **ol** give **ilua**, **elua**, **olua**.

This is because the full forms for he, she, it are **ilu**, **elu**, **olu**.  
**Il**, **el**, **ol** are convenient short forms.

**Me vizitis mea dentisto.** - I went to see my dentist.

**Ilu vizitis lua (sua) matro.** - He visited his (his own) mother.

**Elu perdis ilua parapluvo.** - She lost his umbrella.

**Li admiris sua chapeli.** - They admired their (own) hats.

**Ili admiris elia chapeli.** - They (the men) admired their (the women's) hats.

A possessive adjective always implies the definite article; thus **mea amiko** is *my friend, the friend I spoke of*, while *a friend of mine* is translated **amiko di me**.

## Conditional Mood

The *conditional mood* is formed with the verb ending **-us**:

**Me venus, ma me ne havas biciklo.** - I would come, but I haven't got a bike.

**Ilu manjus.** - He would eat.

**Elu drinkus.** - She would drink.

The verb ending **-us** means *would*, but take care not to confuse two different English tenses using the same construction:

When I was young, I would swim in the river.

Here *would swim* is used instead of *used to swim* or *swam*, and is therefore really the past tense:

**Kande me esis yuna, me natis en la rivero.**

As the name *conditional mood* suggests, there is a condition in this tense, I would run if..., I would sing, but... This type of construction requires the conditional mood **-us** ending.

## Vortaro

**alonge** - along

**altra** - other

**balde** - soon

**balnar** - to bathe

**desegnar** - to draw

**paketo** - package

**obliviari** [ob-li-VYARR] - to forget

**perdar** [perr-DARR] - to lose

**repozar** - to rest

**filiino** - daughter

**finar** - to finish

**imajo** - picture

**komencar** - to begin

**lavar** - to wash

**nazo** - nose

**ruptar** - to break

**sendar** - to send

**spiegulo** - mirror

**servar**[serr-VARR] - to serve

**tro** - too

**voyo** - road/way

Note: **povar** - to be able, **povus** - could (would be able).

### ***Exempli***

I would begin the work. - **Me komencus la laboro.**

She would lose the money. - **Elu perdus la pekunio.**

He would break the mirror. - **Ilu ruptus la spiegulo.**

Their aunt would forget it. - **Lia onklino oblivius ol.**

Its nose would be too small. - **Olua nazo esus tro mikra.**

They would finish the drinks. - **Li finus la drinkaji.**

I would come soon, if I could. - **Me venus balde, se me povus.**

You would draw another picture. - **Vu desegnus altra imajo.**

I would not serve another lady. - **Me ne servus altra damo.**

The mouse would eat the bananas. - **La muso manjus la banani.**

The man would win too many cards. - **La viro ganus tro multa karti.**

The mother would send her daughter. - **La matro sendus sua filiino.**

I would forget to go along the road. - **Me oblivius irar alonge la voyo.**

If I could, I would buy another house. - **Se me povus, me komprus altra domo.**

The clerk would begin to work if he could. - **La klerko komencus laborar se ilu povus.**

Mary would rest, but she does not have the time. - **Mary repozus, ma elu ne havas la tempo.**

Her daughter would go, but the road is too long. - **Elua filiino irus, ma la voyo es tro longa.**

You would bathe in the river, but it is too cold. - **Vu balnus en la rivero, ma es tro kolda.**

I would wash the dog, but I haven't got the time. - **Me lavus la hundo, ma me ne havas la tempo.**

They would send the package, but John has lost it. - **Li sendus la paketo, ma John perdis ol.**

## Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

In English there are two different systems for comparing adjectives:

1.big - bigger - biggest

2.beautiful - more beautiful - most beautiful

Ido has only one method of comparison which is equivalent to the English in the second example above. Instead of *bigger* Ido says *more big* (**plu granda**), instead of *prettiest, most pretty* (**maxim beleta**) and so on. So the above examples would be:

**1.granda - plu granda - maxim granda**

**2.bela - plu bela - maxim bela**

Relational comparisons of adjectives use these constructs:

**plu . . . kam** - more . . . than

**min . . . kam** - less . . . than

**tam . . . kam** - as . . . as

**ne tam . . . kam** - not so . . . as

**maxim . . . de** - most . . . of

**minim . . . de** - least . . . of

**tre** - very

Examples:

**El esas PLU granda KAM me.** - She is taller than I (am).

**Me esas TAM richa KAM ilu.** - I am as rich as he (is).

**Ol es la MAXIM bela de omni.** - It is the finest of all.

**Il esas TRE brava.** - He is very brave.

**Me preferas ico KAM ito.** - I prefer this to that.

Translate *as good as possible* and similar phrases thus: **maxim bona posible.**

Here are some more examples:

**Me esas leda.** - I am ugly.

**Ilu es tam leda kam me.** - He is as ugly as me.

**Elu esas plu leda kam vu.** - She is more ugly (uglier) than you.

**Elu es la maxim leda.** - She is the most ugly (ugliest).

Note that **kam** means both *as* and *than*: **kam** is used in making comparisons, even where English does not use *than*.

Since adverbs of manner are formed from adjectives by changing **a** into **-e** (**bona** - good : **bone** - well, **fin**a - final : **fine** - finally), they are compared like adjectives: **Ilu lektas plu bone** - He reads better.

### **Vortaro**

**alta** - high

**chipa** - cheap

**danjeroza** - dangerous

**fresha** - fresh

**inteligenta** - intelligent

**interesanta** - interesting

**kontenta** - contented

**kurta** - short

**larja** - wide

**leda** - ugly

**mola** - soft

**povra** - poor

**plena (de)** - full (of)

**pura** - pure

**quieta** - quiet

**simpla** - simple

**stupida** - stupid

**vakua** [VA-kwa] - empty

### **Exempli**

The trees are high. - **La arbori es alta.**

That river is wider. - **Ta rivero esas plu larja.**

The apples are cheap. - **La pomi esas chipa.**

This work is simpler. - **Ca laboro es plu simpla.**

The bananas are cheaper. - **La banani es plu chipa.**

That water is the purest. - **Ta aquo esas la maxim pura.**

This box is full of bananas. - **Ca buxo es plena de banani.**

This road is too dangerous. - **Ca voyo esas tro danjeroza.**

He is drawing the empty bottle. - **Ilu desegnas la vakua botelo.**

That child is as quiet as a mouse. - **Ta infanto es tam quieta kam muso.**

The meat is fresher than the fish. - **La karno es plu fresha kam la fisho.**

My house is higher than your house. - **Mea domo esas plu alta kam vua domo.**

His dog is the fiercest in the town. - **Ilua hundo esas la maxim feroce en la urbo.**

She is the ugliest girl in the shop. - **Elu es la maxim leda puerino en la butikio.**

He is the poorest teacher in this town. - **Ilu es la maxim povra instruktisto en ca urbo.**

Jane's nose is shorter than Mary's nose. - **La nazo di Jane esas plu kurta kam la nazo di Mary.**

They are the most contented men in the pub. - **Li es la maxim kontenta viri en la drinkerio.**

This armchair is softer than that armchair. - **Ca berjero esas plu mola kam ta berjero.**

I read the most interesting book in the shop. - **Me lektis la maxim interesanta libro en la butikio.**

Our daughter is the most intelligent girl in that school. - **Nia filiino es la maxim inteligenta yunino en ta skolo.**

## **Buildings - Edifici**

**arto-galerio** - art gallery

**balno-baseno** - swimming pool

**biblioteko** [bi-blyo-TE-ko] - library  
**drinkerio** [drin-KE-ryo] - pub  
**fabrikerio** [fa-bri-KE-ryo] - factory  
**farmo-domo** [FARR-mo-DO-mo] - farmhouse  
**incendio-domo** [in-CEN-dyo-DO-mo] - fire station  
**kirko** [KIRR-ko] - church  
**policeyo** - police station  
**posto-kontoro** - post office  
**hospitalo** - hospital  
**restorerio** [res-to-RE-ryo] - restaurant  
**urbo-domo** [URR-bo-DO-mo] - town hall  
**banko** - bank  
**butiko** - shop  
**cinemo** - cinema  
**domo** - house  
**hotelo** - hotel  
**dometo** - cottage  
**faro** - lighthouse  
**moskeo** - mosque  
**palaco** - palace  
**muzeo** [mu-ZE-o] - museum  
**teatro** [te-A-tro] - theatre  
**gareyo** - garage  
**edifico** [e-di-FI-co] - building  
**kafeerio** [ka-fe-E-ryo] - cafe  
**kastelo** [kas-TE-lo] - castle  
**katedralo** [ka-te-DRA-lo] - cathedral  
**kazerno** [ka-ZERR-no] - barracks

**kontoro** - office

**laverio** [la-VE-ryo] - laundry

**staciono** [sta-ci-O-no] - station

**templo** - temple

**kapelo** - chapel

**skolo** - school

### ***Vortifado***

**-estr-** (head of, chief of): **polico** - police, **policestro** - police chief,  
**skolo** - school, **skolestro** - headmaster, **urbo** - town, **urbestro** -  
 mayor

### ***Vortaro***

**al** = a la - to the

**altra** - other

**apologiar** - to apologise

**kom** - as/for

**chera** - dear/expensive

**dejuno** - lunch

**esperar** - to hope

**maro** - sea

**facar** - to do/make

**forsan** - perhaps

**fru-dejuneto** - breakfast

**garsono** [garr-SO-no] - waiter

**intencar** - to intend

**ja** - already

**jeristo** - manager

**juar** [ju-ARR] - to enjoy

**kelka** - some, **kelke** - rather

**komprenar** - to understand

**kredar** - to believe

**omnibuso** - bus

**lasar falar** - to let fall/to drop

**pano** - bread

**parolar** - to speak

**pasar** - to pass

**per** [perr] - by means of

**quala?** - how?

**quik** - at once

**sat** - enough

**sonar** - to ring

**to** - that (noun)

**telefonilo** - telephone

**neglijar** - to neglect/to treat  
carelessly

**adibe** - to there (that place)

### ***Konversado***

En la hotelo (J=jeristo, M=Sioro Morgan)



J: Bon jorno, Sioro Morgan! Me esperas ke vu pasis bona nokto hike en la Rejala Hotelo.

M: Yes, sat bona. Ma la lito ne es tre mola. Olu esas kelke harda.

J: Me apologias. Me ne komprenas pro quo. Forsan ulu negliis sua laboro. Ni donos a vu altra chambro kun nova lito. Ka vu ja manjis fru-dejuneto? Me esperas ke vu juis ol.

M: Fakte no! La ovi esis kolda e la garsono lasis falar kelka kafeo sur mea pano! Do, me intencas manjar mea dejuno en restorerio.

J: Me parolos quik al garsono. Altra garsono servos vu.

M: Bone, forsan me manjos hike. Me ne savas. Me vizitas hodie la maro. Me prizas balnar. Me iras de hike per la treno.

J: Me kredas ke la treno es chera. La omnibuso es plu chipa. Ho! Pardonez a me! La telefonilo sonas. Til rivido, Sioro Morgan!

### **Questioni**

1. Quale nomesas la hotelo? → Olu nomesas la Rejala Hotelo.
2. Ka Sioro Morgan pasis bona nokto? → Yes, sat bone.
3. Quala esis ilua lito? → Olu esis kelke harda.
4. Quon Sro Morgan manjis kom fru-dejuneto? → Ilu manjis ovi.
5. Kad ilu juis ilua fru-dejuneto? → No, ilu ne juis ol.
6. Qua lasis falar la kafeo sur ilua pano? → La garsono.
7. Adube Sro Morgan iras hodie? → Ilu iras a la maro.
8. Quon ilu prizas facar? → Ilu prizas balnar en la maro.
9. Quale ilu iras adibe? → Ilu iras per la treno.
10. Ka la treno es plu chipa kam la omnibuso? → No, plu chera.

### **Vortaro**

**butro** - butter  
**febla** - weak

**lenta** - slow  
**margarino** - margarine

**forta** - strong  
**grava** - heavy  
**homo** - person  
**lejera** - light

**piro** - pear  
**preferar A (kam B)** - to prefer  
A (to B)  
**rapida** - fast

### ***Generala Questioni***

1. Kad elefanto esas plu granda kam muso? → Yes, multople plu granda kam muso.
2. Ka muso es plu lejera kam hundo? → Yes, plu lejera kam hundo.
3. Ka hotelo esas plu mikra kam domo? → No, generale plu granda kam domo.
4. Ka vu es la maxim grava homo en vua domo? → Kompreneble, yes!
5. Ka treno es plu lenta kam biciklo? → No, treno es plu rapida.
6. Ka homo esas plu forta kam gorilo? → No, homo esas multe plu febla kam gorilo.
7. Ka butro es plu chera kam margarino? → Yes, margarino es plu chipa.
8. Ka vu preferas pomo kam piro? → Yes, pomo kam piro.
9. Ka la televisiono es plu bona kam la cinemo? → No, kompreninde ne.
10. Ka vu esas la maxim inteligenta homo en vua familio? → No, regretinde ne.

## ***Lesson 11 - Dek e unesma Leciono***

### **Days of the Week**

(Noun Form → Adverbial Form: Another Form)

**lundio** [LUN-dyo] → Monday : **lundie** / **ye lundio** - on Monday(s)

**mardio** [MARR-dyo] → Tuesday : **mardie** / **ye mardio** - on Tuesday(s)

**merkurdio** [merr-KURR-dyo] → Wednesday : **merkurdie** / **ye merkurdio** - on Wednesday(s)

**jovdio** [JOV-dyo] → Thursday : **jovdie** / **ye jovdio** - on Thursday(s)

**venerdio** [ve-NERR-dyo] → Friday : **venerdie** / **ye venerdio** - on Friday(s)

**saturdio** [sa-TURR-dyo] → Saturday : **saturdie** / **ye saturdio** - on Saturday(s)

**sundio** [SUN-dyo] → Sunday : **sundie** / **ye sundio** - on Sunday(s)

Note that capital letters are not used for days or months in Ido.

### ***Vortaro***

**furtisto** - thief

**policestro** - police chief

**falar** - to fall

**horlojeto** - watch

**de** - of/from

**envenar** - to come in/enter

### ***Exempli***

On Sunday we do not work. - **Ye sundio ni ne laboras.**

She likes Tuesdays a lot. - **Elu multe prizas mardii.**

On Monday I went to London. - **Lundie me iris a London.**

He will not come on Monday. - **Ilu ne venos ye lundio.**

I stayed in bed on Thursday. - **Me restis en lito jovdie.**

On Wednesday I will go to Paris. - **Merkurdie me iros a Paris.**

Will you buy the food on Saturday? - **Ka tu kompros la manjajo ye saturdayo?**

I was born on Friday, the eighth of May. - **Me naskis ye venerdio, la okesma di mayo.**

They disappeared on Thursday in the cinema. - **Li desaparís ye jovdio en la cinemo.**

On Monday a thief took the police chief's watch. - **Ye lundio furtisto pren-ganis la horlojeto di la poliestro.**

## Time

**Qua kloko es?** - What time is it?

**Es tri kloki.** - It's three o'clock.

**Es un kloko.** - It's one o'clock.

**Es non kloki.** - It's nine o'clock.

**Ye un kloko.** - At one o'clock.

**Ye sep kloki.** - At seven o'clock.

## Note

1. O'clock is expressed by **kloko**, which when used with any numeral above one becomes **kloki**: **un kloko, du kloki, tri kloki**, etc.
2. Ido often uses the 24-hour clock, **duadek kloki** - 8 o'clock (p.m.)

## Exempli

What time is it? - **Qua kloko es?**

It's three o'clock. - **Es tri kloki.**

You ate at five o'clock. - **Vi manjis ye kin kloki.**

No, he comes at nine o'clock. - **No, ilu venas ye non kloki.**

I began to work at seven o'clock. - **Me komencis laborar ye sep kloki.**

At ten o'clock I fell from my bed. - **Ye dek kloki me falis de mea lito.**

At two o'clock they found the cafe. - **Ye du kloki li trovis la kafeerio.**

Does the postman come at eight o'clock? - **Ka la letro-portisto venas ye ok kloki?**

It was six o'clock when their daughter came in. - **Esis sis kloki kande lia filiino envenis.**

At four o'clock, on Monday the thirtieth of August she was born. - **Ye quar kloki, lundie, la triadekesma di agosto elu naskis.**

### **La Voyajo**

Me arivis a la staciono. La veturo haltis. Portisto advenis.

"Adube vu iras?" ilu questionis. "Me iras a Paris." me respondis.

"Ka vu havas vua bilieto?" - "No!" - "Venez komprar olu en la kontoro."

Me pagis la veturisto. Me donis ad ilu gratifikuro (tip).

"Hastez!" klamis la portisto. La treno departos sen vu."

"On devas vendar la bilieti plu rapide! Me volus komprar jurnalono. Ube esas la jurnal-vendeyo? Ho no! Me perdabis mea monetuyo (purse)!"

Esas tri kloki. La treno departas. Mea kofro (trunk) esas en la pako-vagono.

Me dicis en la kordio a mea kofro: "Til la rivido!"

### **Relative Pronouns**

A *relative pronoun* is a placeholder in a clause that *relates* back to a noun preceding it in the sentence, called the antecedent.

Singular

**la yunino QUA amoras me** - the girl THAT (or WHO) loves

me

**la hundo QUA atakis me** - the dog THAT (or WHICH)  
attacked me

Plural

**la yunini QUI amoras me** - the girls THAT (or WHO) love me

**la hundi QUI atakis me** - the dogs THAT (or WHICH)  
attacked me

### Note

1. Don't let the fact that there is more than one possibility in English confuse you. *Who* and *which* can both be replaced by *that*.
2. Take care not to confuse the relative pronouns with the interrogative pronouns. In questions **quo** is used for *what* (things), and **qua** and **qui** for *who* (people). In statements, **qua** and **qui** are used for both *who*, *which*, and *that*, may refer to people or things.
3. As the examples show, when *that* is one person or thing then **qua** is used, but when it is more than one then **qui** must be used.

As with the interrogative pronouns, if the *that* is having the action done to it by someone or something in the second part of the sentence then an **-n** ending is added:

Singular

**la yunino QUAN me amoras** - the girl THAT (or WHOM) I  
love

**la hundo QUAN me atakis** - the dog THAT (or WHICH) I  
attacked

Plural

**la yunini QUIN me amoras** - the girls THAT (or WHOM) I  
love

**la hundi QUIN me atakis** - the dogs THAT (or WHICH) I  
attacked

In these sentences above, *I* is doing the action to *that*.)

### Note

In English it is very often possible to omit *whom/that/which*: The girl (that) I love. **Quan** and **quin** must never be omitted in Ido.- **La yunino QUAN me amoras....**

There is also a conjunction **ke** which means *that*. This is used for independent clauses, when the action in the first verb does not directly affect anyone or anything in the second part of the sentence: He says that he is ill - **Ilu dicas KE ilu esas malada.**

### Exempli

**Quo eventis?** - What happened?

**Qui parolis?** - Who (plural) spoke?

**Qua esas ibe?** - Who is there?

**Quin vu vidas?** - Whom (plural) do you see?

**Quon ilu dicis?** - What did he say?

**La viro qua parolis.** - The man who spoke.

**La viri qui parolis.** - The men who spoke.

**La viro quan vu vidis.** - The man whom you saw.

**La accidenti qui eventis.** - The accidents that took place.

**Me ne audis (to) quon ilu dicis.** - I did not hear what he said.

Note that **qua** is also used as an adjective: **Qua viro parolis?** - Which man spoke?

We will learn more about this in Lesson 12.

### Vortaro

**avertar** - to warn

**avulo** - grandfather

**danjero** - danger

**kurar** - to run

**kustar** - to cost

**oldo** - old person

**plura** - several

**posho** - pocket

**pri** - concerning/about

**quante?** - how much?

**lago** - lake

**linguo** - language

**mashino** - machine

**navo** - ship

**stacar** - to be standing,

**staceskar** - to stand up

**stranja** - strange

**tante** - so

### ***Exempli***

The girls he loves. - **La yunini quin ilu amas.**

The machine that I saw. - **La mashino quan me vidis.**

The girls that love him. - **La yunini qui amas ilu.**

The lakes that she likes. - **La lagi quin elu prizas.**

The doctor that lives here. - **La mediko qua habitas hike.**

The language that he speaks. - **La linguo quan ilu parolas.**

The old man who sleeps here. - **La olda viro qua dormas hike.**

The policeman that is running. - **La policisto qua kuras.**

The thief that is standing up. - **La furtisto qua staceskas.**

The car that the soldier bought. - **La automobilo quan la soldato kompris.**

### ***Exempli***

The strange men who stood up were policemen.

**La stranja homi qui staceskis esis policisti.**

The old man/woman who stood on the table fell. -

**La oldo qua stacis sur la tablo falis.**

The machine that he bought cost a lot of money. -

**La mashino quan ilu kompris kustis multa pekunio.**

I don't want to speak a language that is so ugly. -

**Me ne deziras parolar linguo qua es tante leda.**

Her uncle who was born in Derby had several dogs. -

**Elua onklulo qua naskis en Derby havis plura hundi.**

Soon I shall visit my grandfather who lives in York. -



**Balde me vizitos mea avulo qua habitas en York.**

I will not run to my father who has fallen in the water. -

**Me ne kuros a mea patro qua falis aden la aquo.**

The ship that we wanted to see is going along the river. -

**La navo quan ni deziris vidar iras alonge la rivero.**

How much did the books cost that you have in your pocket? -

**Quante kustis la libri quin tu havas en tua posho?**

He warned the children who were swimming in the lake about the danger. -

**Ilu avertis la yuni qui natis en la lago pri la danjero.**

**Ilu avertis la yuni pri la danjero, li-qui natis en la lago.**

## Countries

For international form, the names of countries and continents are an exception to the rule that all singular nouns end with -o.

The Ido forms are modified from one of the following groups.

1. A number of countries have an internationally known Latinized form which ends in **-a** or **-ia**: **Italia, Amerika, Yugoslavia, Austria, Andora, Angola, Chinia, Japonia.**
2. Many countries, including nearly all recent and emerging states are known throughout the world by their national names and the stress falls on the last syllable, as if those names would end with **-ia**: **Peru** [pe-RU], **Portugal** [porr-tu-GAL], **Pakistan** [pa-kis-TAN] **Viet Nam** [vyet-NAM], but **Chile** [CHI-le]
3. Those countries ending in **-land** take normal **-o** ending, **Finlando.**

## Vortaro

**aero** - air

**aranjar** - to arrange

**bone** - okay

**vakanco** -holiday

**vento** - wind

**vera** - true

**bonega** - excellent  
**explorar** - to explore  
**gareyo** - garage  
**Idisto** - Idist  
**maro** - sea  
**monto** - mountain  
**montrar** - to show  
**natar** - to swim  
**omno** - everything,  
**opinionar** - to think  
**pluvo** - rain  
**propozar** - to propose  
**restar** - to stay  
**to** - that (pronoun)

**varmeta** [varr-ME-ta] - mild/  
 luke warm  
**vidajo** - view  
**voyajo** - journey  
**quale** (used before a sentence) -  
 like/how  
**quala** (before a noun) - as/like  
**Anglia** - England  
**Dania** [DA-nya] - Denmark  
**Hispania** [his-PA-nya] - Spain  
**Portugal** - Portugal  
**Suedia** [SWE-dya] - Sweden  
**Suisa** [SWI-sa] - Swiss  
**Suisia** [SWI-sya] - Switzerland  
**Suisiano** [swi-si-A-no] - Swiss

## ***pensar, opiniar, and kredar***

**pensar** - to think = to use the brain:

**Me pensas pri Jane.** - I am thinking about Jane.

**opinionar** - to think = to be of a certain opinion:

**Me opinionas ke elu es bela.** - I think that she is beautiful.

**kredar** - to believe can also be used:

**Me kredas ke la buxo esas vakua.** - I think/believe that the box is empty.

## ***Konversado***

(P=Peter, M=Mary)

P: Adube ni iros dum la vakanco?

M: Ni certe ne restos en Anglia. Me ne prizas la pluvo e la vento.  
 Me multe preferas la suno. Ni iros a varma lando quala Hispania o Portugal.

P: Ta landi es por me tro varma. Me preferas varmeta lando quala

(ne quale) Suedia o Dania. [quale on preferas ...] La vetero povas esar bonega ibe.

M: Quon tu opinionas pri voyajo en la monti? La fresha aero, la foresti, la bela vidaji...

P: No, me preferas la maro. Me deziras natar (swim).

M: Ma, tu povas natar en la lagi (lakes).

P: To esas vera. Yes, bone, ni exploros (explore) la monti (mountains).

M: A qua lando ni iros?

P: Me propozas Suisia. Es multa Idisti en Suisia. Multi de li es bona amiki. Me aranjos omno. La Suisiana Idisti montros a ni sua bela lando.

### **Questioni**

1. A qua Peter parolas? → Ilu parolas a Mary.
2. Ka Mary prizas pluvo? → No, elu ne prizas olu.
3. Quon elu preferas? → Elu preferas la suno.
4. Ka Hispania es kolda lando? → No, olu es varma lando.
5. Ube esas la fresha aero? → Olu esas en la monti.
6. Ka Peter prizas natar? → Yes, multe.
7. Quon Peter e Mary exploros? → Li exploros la monti.
8. Adube li iros? → Li iros a Suisa.
9. Qua aranjos la vakanco? → Peter aranjos omno.
10. Qui montros Suisia a Peter e Mary? → La Idisti di Suisia.

### **Generala Questioni**

1. Adube vu iros dum la vakanco? → Me iros a Grekia.
2. Ka vu prizas la suno? → Yes, nam me esas nordala Europano.
3. Ka la fresha aero es bona por vu? → Yes, tre bona por me.

4. Ka vu parolas multa lingui? → Yes, me bezonas parolar multa lingui.
5. Ka vu havas botelo de lakto en vua posho? → No, sur la tablo.
6. Ka sep e non es dek? →  $7+9 = 10$ ? No, to es dek-e-sis.
7. Ka vua automobilo esas en la staciono od en la gareyo? → En mea gareyo.
8. Ube vu sidas? → En la berjero (arm-chair).
9. Ka vu intencas manjar balde? → Yes, nam mea laboro nun fineskas.
10. Ka vu skribas a plura Idisti? → Yes, specale ad Idisti en USA.

## ***Lesson 12 - Dek e duesma Leciono***

### **Negatives for Auxiliary and Quasi-auxiliary Verbs**

The negative in Ido is usually formed by putting **ne** in front of the verb. But take care with negating auxiliary verbs, for the following nuances and style are peculiar to Ido.

**mustar** - must (expressing absolute necessity, without condition, indisputably)

**Vu mustas NE acendar alumeto, nam la chambro es plena de gaso. -**

You must not light a match; the room is full of gas.

**Vu NE mustas acendar alumeto, nam me povas vidar suficante bone. -**

You don't have to light a match; I can see well enough.

**devar** - ought to (proper or suitable, by any manner of moral or other obligation)

**Me NE devas helpar vu. -** I haven't got any obligation to help you.

**Vu devas Ne adulterar. -** You should not (ought not to) commit adultery.

**darfar** - may (having the right or permission, without fear of contradiction or interference)

**Me NE darfes fumar hike. -** I may not smoke here. I must not smoke here.

**Me darfes NE asistar skolo. -** I am allowed to stay away from school.

**povar** - can (to be in a state or position that enables an act or deed to be accomplished)

**Me NE povas pagar imposturi. -** I can not pay taxes.

**Me povas NE pagar imposturi. -** I can evade paying taxes.

**bezonar - need**

**Ilu NE bezonis facar olu.** - He didn't need to do it. So he didn't do it.

**Ilu NE bezonas facir olu.** - He need not have done it, though he did it.

**Ilu bezonas NE facir olu.** - He shouldn't have done it. Too late.

**audacar - dare**

**Me NE audacas informar ilu pri la mala informo.** - I do not dare to inform him of the bad news.

**Elu audacis NE askoltar mea konsilo.** - She dared to ignore my advice.

**Vortifado**

**-eg-** (This increases the size or intensity of the root word):

**bona** - good → **bonega** - excellent

**varma** - warm → **varmega** - hot

**domo** - house → **domego** - mansion

**dormar** - to sleep → **dormegar** - to sleep heavily

**-et-** (This decreases the size or intensity of the root word):

**varma** - warm → **varmeta** - lukewarm/mild

**domo** - house → **dometo** - cottage

**dormar** - to sleep → **dormetar** - to doze

**ridar** - to laugh → **ridetar** - to smile

**forko** - garden fork → **forketo** - table fork

**More on Time**

So far we have only learned *o'clock*.

06:05 = **sis kloki kin**

06:25 = **sis kloki duadek e kin**

06:50 = **sis kloki kinadek**

03:30 = **tri kloki e duimo**

01:15 = **un kloko e quarimo**

01:45 = **un kloko e tri quarimi**

All times are calculated in minutes past the hour. Minutes before the hour are never used in Ido:

**du kloki kin** (02:05) - five past two, literally 2 o'clock five (minutes)

**du kloki duadek** (02:20) - twenty past two

**du kloki kinadek e kin** (02:55) - five to three

**non kloki quaradek e non** (09:49) - eleven minutes to ten

For *half past* use **e duimo**:

**quar kloki e duimo** - half past four, lit. 4 o'clock and a half (hour)

**kin kloki e duimo** - half past five: The **e** is important, as **kin kloki duimo** could possibly be mistaken for *half a minute past five*.

The same applies to *quarter past* and *quarter to*:

**sis kloki e quarimo** - quarter past six, lit. 6 o'clock and a quarter (hour)

**sis kloki e tri quarimi** - quarter to seven, lit. 6 o'clock and 3/4 (hour)

### ***Exempli***

2:05 - **du kloki kin**

3:40 - **tri kloki quaradek**

17:00 - **dek e sep kloki**

14:47 - **dek e quar kloki quaradek e sep**

two o'clock (02:00) - **du kloki**

five past nine (09:05) - **non kloki kin**

quarter past six (06:15) - **sis kloki e quarimo**

quarter to seven (06:45) - **sis kloki e tri quarimi**

twenty five to eleven (10:35) - **dek kloki triadek e kin**

seven minutes to seven (06:53) - **sis kloki kinadek e tri**

## Interrogative Adjective - *qua*

**Qua** as we have seen can mean *who/which/that*. When placed before a singular or plural noun **qua** then means *what?* or *which?*:

**Qua hundo?** - What dog/ Which dog? **Qua hundi?** - What dogs/ Which dogs?

## Summary - *qua, qui, quo*

Interrogative:

Singular: **Qua viro venas?** - What man is coming?

Plural: **Qua viri venas?** - What men are coming?

Singular: **Qua venas?** - Who is coming?

Plural: **Qui venas?** - Who (*plural*) is coming?

Singular/Plural **Quo venas?** - What is coming?

Relative:

Singular: **La viro qua venas.** - The man that is coming.

Plural: **La viri qui venas.** - The men that are coming.

Singular: **La treno qua iras.** - The train that is going.

Plural: **La treni qui iras.** - The trains that are going.

## Impersonal Verbs for Weather

Verbs in Ido relating to weather are impersonal. The *it* used in English does not really refer to anything, and must not be translated:

**Pluvas** - It's raining (**pluvo** - rain)

**Nivas** - It's snowing (**nivo** - snow)



**Frosta** - It's freezing (**frosto** - a freeze)

**Ventas** - It's windy (**vento** - wind)

**Pruinas** - It's frosty / There's a frost. (**pruino** - frost)

### **Vortaro**

|  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| <b>agnoskar</b> - to admit/acknowledge | <b>kuzo</b> - cousin            |
| <b>ankore</b> - still/yet              | <b>loko</b> - place             |
| <b>audar</b> - to hear                 | <b>mortar</b> - to die          |
| <b>avino</b> - grandmother             | <b>nomo</b> - name              |
| <b>cayare</b> - this year (adverb)     | <b>omni</b> - everybody         |
| <b>danko pro</b> - thanks for          | <b>pluvar</b> - to rain         |
| <b>decidar</b> - to decide             | <b>post-karto</b> - post card   |
| <b>divenar</b> - to become             | <b>praktikar</b> - to practise  |
| <b>ecepte</b> - except                 | <b>prezente</b> - at present    |
| <b>esforcar</b> - to try               | <b>respondo</b> - answer        |
| <b>fortunoza</b> - fortunate           | <b>se</b> - if                  |
| <b>fotografuro</b> - a photograph      | <b>ruptar</b> - to break        |
| <b>gambo</b> - leg                     | <b>saluto</b> - greeting        |
| <b>ja</b> - already                    | <b>Skotia</b> - Scotland        |
| <b>hospitalo</b> - hospital            | <b>trista</b> - sad/sorry       |
| <b>infanteto</b> - baby                | <b>til nun</b> - as yet/ so far |
| <b>invitar</b> - to invite             | <b>vakance</b> - on holiday     |
| <b>kozo</b> - thing                    | <b>venonta yaro</b> - next year |
| <b>kara</b> - dear (affection)         |                                 |

### **Letro ad Amiko**

La 27ma di agosto

Kara Maria

Danko pro la interesanta letro e la bela post-karti quin tu sendis a me. Me esas tre trista audar ke tua avino ruptis gambo kande elu esforcis klimar Blanka Monto (Mont Blanc) cayare. Elu es tre fortuneza ke elu ne mortis.

Me havas kuzo qua deziras divenar klimero, ma prezente ilu nur evas ok yari. Ilu praktikas sur la muro en la gardeno. Til nun ilu ne falis.

Adube tu iros vakance en la venonta yaro? Se tu ne ja decidis, me invitas tu a Skotia. Ofte pluvas hike en Skotia, me agnoskas to, ma es multa interesanta loki e kozi quin ni povos vidar. Ni certe vizitos Edinburgh.

Tu volis vidar mea familio. Do me sendas a tu fotografuro. Tu ja konocas la nomi di omni ecepte la infanteto qua nomesas Paul.

Skribez balde tua respondo. Mea saluti a tua avino e la familio.

Tua amiko, Roger

### **Vortaro**

**quala?** - what sort of, what kind of, what or how is it like?      **revuo** [RE-vwo] - magazine

**renkontrar** - to meet

**membro** - member

**abonar** - to subscribe to

**societo** - society

**libro-listo** - book-list

### **Questioni pri la letro**

1. Quala esas la post-karti de Maria? → Ol esas interesanta.
2. Qua ruptis gambo? → Avino di Maria.
3. Quon elu klimis? → Elu klimis Blanka Monto.
4. Kad elu mortis? → No, fortuneze elu ne mortis.
5. Qua deziras divenar klimero? → Kuzo di Roger.
6. Quante ilu evas? → Ilu evas ok yari.
7. Sur quo ilu praktikas? → Sur la muro en la gardeno.
8. Kad ilu falis? → No, til nun ilu ne falis.
9. Se Maria venos a Skotia, kad elu e Roger vizitos Edinburgh? → Ho, yes.
10. Quon Roger sendas a Maria? → Fotografuro di/pri la familio di Roger.
11. Quale nomesas la infanteto? → Lu nomesas Paul.
12. Quon Roger esperas recevar balde? → Respondo de Maria.

### **Generala Questioni**

1. Ka vu parolas Ido bone? → Yes, nam Ido es marveloze facila.
2. Ka vu ofte lektas Ido? → Yes, me prizas lektar libri en Ido.
3. Ka vu povas skribar Ido? → Komprenende yes ed anke devas me.
4. Ka vu skribas ad Idisti en altra landi? → Yes, kelkatempe.
5. Ka vu renkontras altra Idisti? → No, tre rare. Nam ne esas multa Idisti.
6. Kad es multa Ido-libri en vua domo? → No, nur kelka libri che me.
7. Ka vu kompros altra Ido-libri? → Yes, me intencas komprar oli.
8. Ka vu havas libro-listo? → Yes, la listo de Cardiff.
9. Ka vu abonis Ido-revui? → Yes, kelka revui.
10. Ka vu esas membro dil Ido-Societo? → Yes, membro di Franca Ido-Societo e di Nord-Amerikana Ido-Societo.

### **De Certena Lektolibro**

#### **---- Lektajo 01**

La jorno e la nokto. La somero e la vintro. La vorti e la frazi. Un homo havas un boko e du oreli. Du homi havas du boki e quar oreli. Un manuo havas kin fingri. Du manui havas dek fingri e povas aplaudar altri. Granda e mikra. Multa o poka. Bela o leda. Mea amiko havas du granda domi. Multa domi havas poka pekunio. Li havas bela flori en la gardeno. Il havas altra laboro.

#### **---- Lektajo 02**

Ante parolar on devas pensar. Me volas lernar la linguo Ido. Tu venas por laborar. Adube tu volas irar? Me volas kelke promenar. Singla homo havas nur un boko por parolar, ma du oreli por audar. La infanti sekrete ludas dop la domo. Quon facas la genitori? La patro skribas plura letri e la matro lektas bela libro.

**---- Lektajo 03**

Li ne esas hike. Tu ne esas ibe. Ube ilu esas? Ni ne savas. Vi promenas ofte.

Me ne es en la domo. Kad ilu komprenas to? No, ilu ne komprenas.

Ka la infanti ploras? No, li ne ploras, kontree li ridas.

Kad omna homi esas kontenta? No, nur tre poka homi esas kontenta.

Komprero: "Ica piri ne es manjebla, li es acerba (sour)."

Vendisto: "Yes, me savas lo, ma me ne manjas li, me vendas li."

"Neteso esas tre importanta. Me balnas omnayare adminime (at least) unfoye, tote indiferenta kad [lo] esas necesa o ne."

**---- Lektajo 04**

Mea kuzino havas tri kati, elu multe amas li. Ilu ne pluse parolas kun elu.

Karlo havas du bela libri, lu ofte lektas oli.

Ka vu savas Ido? - No, ne ja (= ankore ne), ma me lernas ol.

Viri e mulieri es en la restorerio, ili drinkas vino, eli drinkas kafeo kun lakto.

Gasto: "Pro quo en ica urbo la reda vino esas plu chera kam la blanka?"

Restoristo: "Ka vu opinionas ke ni recevas la farbo gratuite?"

-"Me ne povas dicernar vua jemeli, quankam (although) me vidas li omnadie."

-"Ma es ya tre simpla, la una nomesas Henriko, e la altra nomesas Alberto."

-(Ma es ya tre simpla dicernar mea jemmeli, Henriko e Alberto.)

**---- Lektajo 05 - parenti - relatives**

La vorti di la frazo.

Mea patro evas quaradek yari. Tua biciklo esas ankore nova.

Me ne havas tempo por vizitar vu che vua domo.

La pordo di la domo esas klozita. Ni volas nun parolar pri nia linguo Ido.

Via genitori prestis a me parapluvo.

Li sendas pekunio per la posto a lia parenti. Elu ne volas dicar olu ad ilu.

A qua apartenas (belongs) ica krayono? Me ne savas a qua olu apartenas.

Ni vidas la flori di la gardeno. Ilua bona patro es ja mortinta (dead).

Patro: "Ka tu nun savas pro quo me batas tu?"

"Yes", singlutas (sobs) Pauleto, "pro ke tu es plu forta kam me."

**Punctuation Marks**

This "Summary of Punctuation Rules" is offered in Ido as a reading and comprehension exercise for your enjoyment and practice.

**Rezumo di la Reguli pri la Puntizado**

- La punto (.) uzesas por separar la frazi;
- La komo (,) por separar la propozicioni;
- La punto komo (;) por separar frazi gramatikale nedependanta, ma ligita per la senco;
- La bipunto (:) por anunciar expliko o citajo;
- La klamo-punto (!) pozesas pos frazo klamanta;
- La question-punto (?) pozesas pos propoziciono direte questionanta (ne pos propoziciono subordinita).
- La cito-hoketi (" ") uzesas por inkluzar omna citajo.

- La parentezi ( ) inkluzas frazo o vorto separenda de la cetera texto;
- La kramponi [ ] ed embracili { } havas analoga roli; un embracio { juntas plura linei (dextre) ad una (sinistre).
- La streketo (-) unionas la parti di vorto kompozita; olu indikas anke la seko di vorto inter du linei.
- La streko (--) indikas chanjo di parolanto; olu devas sempre uzesar en dialogi. On ne darfas uzar olu vice la parentezi, o vice la puntaro.
- La puntaro (...) indikas interrupto di la penso.
- L'alineo (new paragraph) indikas chanjo di temo o nova ordino di pensi.
- La noti (infre di la pagini) devas referesar per numeri (ne per steli, kruci, etc.)

## Lesson 13 - Dek-e-triesma Leciono

### Demonstrative Pronouns

The demonstrative pronoun (*this, these; that, those*) is **ita**, shortened to **ta**, where euphony permits:

**Kad ita esas vua libro?** - Is this your book?

**Ta libri esas mea.** - Those books are mine.

When quite necessary to distinguish between *this* and *that* use **ica** (or **ca**) for *this*, and **ita** (or **ta**) for *that*:

**Ica es bona, ita es mala.** - This one is good, that one is bad.

When it means *this thing, that thing*, use **to** (or **ito, co, ico**):

**Quo esas to?** - What is this?

**Ico esas libro, ito esas plumo.** - This (thing) is a book, that (thing) is a pen.

*That which, what* is translated as **to quo** when used in the most general sense of *that thing or matter which*. When some definite thing is referred to, use **ta qua**, *the one that*, (plural: **ti qui**).

**To quon me dicas esas...** - What I say is ...

**Yen omnaspeca frukti, prenez ti quin vu preferas.** - Here are all kinds of fruit, take those you like best.

When distinction of gender is necessary, **il-, el-, ol-** may be prefixed to these or any other pronouns, except naturally the personal pronouns themselves:

**Iliti facis olu ed elti regardis** - Those (men) did it, and these (women) looked on.

**La matro di mea amiko, elqua...** - My friend's mother, who...

**La matro di mea amiko, ilqua...** - The mother of my friend, who...

### Exempli

They had two daughters who became nurses.

**Li havis du filiini qui divenis flegistini. (Onu ne savas quanta filiinin li havis.)**

They had two daughters, who became nurses.

**Li havis du filiini ed eli divenis flegistini. (Onu savas ke li havis nur du filiini.)**

I like Mary, who is kind. - **Me prizas Mary, nam elu esas benigna.**

**Onu ne darfas dicar ke "me prizas Mary qua esas benigna", nam (for) onu devus imaginar altra Mary qua ne esas benigna.**

Who would you like to be in this drama? (grammatically - Who would you like (him/her/yourself) to be in this drama?)

**Quan vu prizus ke vu esez en ca dramato? (yourself)**

**Quan vu prizus kom aktoro en ca dramato? (anybody)**

**Quan vu prizus vidar en ca dramato? (him/her)**

Who do you think will be the next President of the United States?

**Quan vu opinionas kom la nexta Prezidanto di USA?**

It is hard to determine whom we will vote for in the next election.

**Es nefacila determinar ta por qua ni votos en la venonta elekto.**

It is hard to say who the members will decide is responsible for the job.

**Es nefacila dicar ta, quan la membri decidis, qua responsos pri la laboro.**

It is the man who I believe robbed the First National Bank.

**Lu esas, segun mea kredo, la viro qua furtis la Unesma Nacionala Banko.**

An executive of a large soap company who we understand did not wish to be quoted, announced a 50 percent rise in soap prices.

**Administrero de granda kompanio di sapono, qua ne dezirante citesar segun nia savo, anuncis preco-aumento di 50 procento pri sapono.**



## Possession for *whose*

Instead of whose, Ido uses *of whom, of which, di qua*:

**La autoro, pri la libro di qua me parolis.** - The author whose book I spoke of (literally, the author concerning the book of whom I spoke).

## Indeterminate Pronouns - *it, that*

The pronoun **lo**, just like **co**, **to**, **quo**, refers to an indeterminate type of thing, i.e., a fact:

**Prenez ica pomo, me volas lo.**

Take this apple, I desire it. = I desire you to do so; **me volas ol** would mean *I desire it (the apple)*. Of course you can also say **Prenez ica pomo, me volas to.**

Take this apple, I desire *it*. = I desire you to do so; but in a peculiar situation when there are two apples...

**Prenez ica pomo, me volas to...** would mean.. You take *this* apple, because I want to take *that* one.

**Lo** is also used with adjectives to mark the indeterminate sense:

**Lo bona, lo vera, lo bela**

The Good, the True, the Beautiful

Think of **lo** in Ido as a pronoun: **lo bona** means the situation which is good, **lo quo esas bona**, means *that which is good*, an indeterminate thing which is essentially good.

## Vortifado

**para-** (warding off): **parasuno** - parasol, **parapluvo** - umbrella, **paravento** - wind-screen, windshield (US)

**par-** (completion of action): **parlektar** - to peruse/ read through, **pardrinkar** - to drink up, **parkurar** - to make the circuit of, **parlernar** - to learn thoroughly

**-esk-** (beginning of action): **dormeskar** - to fall asleep, **iraceskar** - to grow angry, **sideskar** - to sit down

Used with noun roots to make a verb, **-esk** means to become, to turn: **vireskar** - to become a man.

Sometimes used with with adjectives to make a verb, **-esk** means becoming, growing, turning (into): **pala** - pale, **paleskar** - to turn pale. When added to the passive participle of a transitive verb, **esk** has the same sense of becoming: **vidateskar** - to become visible

**-ad-** (repetition, frequency): **dansar** - to dance; **danso** - a dance; **dansado** - dancing.

**-ig-** (with a verbal root, means *to cause to*): **dormigar** - to send to sleep; with a non-verbal root, it means *to make, cause to be (such and such)*: **beligar** - to make beautiful, to beautify.

With transitive verbs, **-ig-** has a passive sense (= **igar -ata**), usually followed by the preposition **da**. The use of **-igar** with **da** is in many cases somewhat difficult for English speakers. We recommend the more direct constructions: e.g.

**Me igas la spozino sendar mea letri...** instead of **Me sendigas mea letri da la spozino.**

**Me igas vu atencar ulo...** instead of **Me atencigas ulo da vu.**

**Me igas vu vidar ulo...** instead of **Me vidigas ulo da vu.**

There is usually, however, a straightforward English equivalent for this construction: *to have \_ done (by -)*:

**Me sendigas mea letri da LA spozino.** = I have my letter sent by MY wife.

When in Ido the relationship is apparent, we use the definite article, **la** instead of **mea**.

**-iz-** (to cover, supply, provide with):

**armizar** - to arm (provide with weapons)

**limitizar** - to limit (fix a limit to)

**adresizar** - to address (write address on)

When necessary, the sense *coat, cover with* may be rendered clearer by prefixing **sur-** (= on): **surorizar** - to gild/ plate with gold

**-if-** (to produce, generate, secrete):

**florifar** - to blossom

**sudorifar** - to perspire

**sangifar** - to bleed/ lose blood

### ***Exempli***

I want to pack this up. - **Me volas pakigar ico.**

Give me some brown paper. - **Donez a me pak-papero.**

I want some string. - **Me bezonas kordeto.**

Have you any sealing wax? - **Kad vu havas siglovaxo?**

I can give you some paste. - **Me povas donar a vu gluo.**

That will do. - **To konvenos.**

Where is the pastebottle? - **Ube esas la botelo de gluo?**

Here it is. - **Yen olu.**

There is no brush in it. - **Ne esas pinselo en ol.**

Here is the brush. - **Yen la pinselo.**

Now I want a label. - **Nun me deziras etiketo.**

A gummed label. - **Gumizita etiketo**

I haven't a gummed one. - **Me ne havas un gumizita.**

Will this one do? - **Kad ica konvenos?**

Yes, thanks. - **Yes, danko.**

### ***Jasper Parolas***

(**kontoro** - bureau)

"Saluto! Me nomesas Jasper. Me habitas en Rotterdam, e me laboras en Leiden.

Me habitas en mikra, moderna domo. Me laboras en granda, anciena kontoro.

Me prizas vino e muziko. Me adoras bela mulieri, specale se li esas anke richa.

Me havas nova automobilo. Olu esas mikra, reda e rapida.

Mea familio es sat granda. Me ipsa es celiba (unmarried).

Me havas du fratini. Li nomesas Mieke ed Anja. Anja esas mariajita.

Me havas un fratulo. Ilu nomesas Bert. Bert laboras en Zaandam.

Me anke havas matro. Mea matro esas richa. Elu havas multa pekunio.

Me ipsa es ofte povra. Me ofte havas nula pekunio.

Me ne havas patro. Ilu es mortinta. Me iras nun. Til rivido!"

### ***De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 6***

L'infanto ploras. L'advokato (barrister) pledis (pleaded) por l'akuzato.

On vidas per l'okuli, ed on audas per l'oreli. To es tre bon okazono.

Il ne havas mult amiki. Me amas ta gentil infanti.

Januaro esas l'unesma monato dil yaro.

Li venas del (= de+la) vilajo ed iras al(a+la) urbo.

La stranjeri duktesas dal (= da+la) duktisto (conductor).

"Hike mea onklulo sendas a me cent franki ed ilu skribas: Til rivido! Ka to koncernas me o la pekunio?"

Instruktisto a dicipulo: "To esas skeleto di mamifero, di qua mamifero olu esas?"

Dicipulo: "Di mortinta bestio." (skeleto - skeleton mamifero - mammal)

Profesoro: "Ka vu povas dicar a me quo eventas kun barometro, se ni sidas kun olu en aerostato (balloon), e se ni acensas an/ad cirkume du kilometri en la aero"

Kandidato: "La barometro venas kun ni."

### ***De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 07***

Bela, plu bela, maxim bela. Bona, plu bona, maxim bona.

Facila, min facila, minim facila. Kurta, min kurta, minim kurta.

Vu es plu richa kam elu.

Ilu es la maxim laborema (hard-working) de omni.

Ica persono esas min inteligenta kam fiero (proud).

Lu esas nur stulta (silly).

Li facas minim posibla bruio (noise).

Ube vu esis hiero? Hiero me facis bel exkurso (excursion) kun mea amiko.

Ka tu ja respondis ad il? No, ne ja, ma me intencas skribar ad ilu balde.

Spozino: "Ube tu restis dum tante longa tempo hiero vespere?"

Spozulo: "Che mea bon amiko."

Spozino: "Ed ube restis tua bon amiko?"

Spozulo: "En la taverno (tavern, bar)."

Viro renkontris konocato e dicis ad ilu:

"Hiero me vidis nia amiko Karlo, me preske ne-plus konocis ilu.

Vu es magra, ed anke me es magra, ma ilu es plu magra kam ni du kune."

## ***Lesson 14 - Dek-e-quaresma Leciono***

### **More on Numerals**

The cardinal numerals are:

**un** 1, **du** 2, **tri** 3, **quar** 4, **kin** 5, **sis** 6, **sep** 7, **ok** 8, **non** 9, **dek** 10

**cent** 100, **mil** 1000, **milion** 1,000,000, **bilion** 1,000,000,000,000.

In the USA billion is 1,000,000,000 but we recommend you to use the European system, at least for now. Now that the American Banking System has won hegemony over Europe, ultimately the American system is likely to gain more acceptance even in Ido.

The stress position of **milion** [MI-lyon] and **bilion** [BI-lyon] are the same as English million [MIHL-yuhn] and billion [BIHL-yuhn].

From these root numerals all others are formed, the adjectival **-a** being used to show multiplication and the conjunction **e** to show addition. Thus:

**dek e un** - 11 (ten plus one)

**dek e du** - 12 (ten plus two)

**dek e sis** - 16 (ten plus six)

**dek e non** - 19 (ten plus nine)

**duadek** - 20 (twice ten)

**duadek e un** - 21 (twice ten plus one)

**triadek e quar** - 34

**quaradek e kin** - 45

**kinadek e sis** - 56

**cent e sepadek e ok** - 178

**mil e sisadek e sis** - 1066

**mil e nonacent e duadek e tri** - 1923

As in English, numerals may be given out, e.g., when dictating, by naming the digits only. The name of the digit 0 is **zero**. The last two numerals given would then be:

1066 - **un zero sis sis**

1923 - **un non du tri**

Ordinals are formed by the suffix **-esm**: **unesma** - 1st, **duesma** - 2nd, **triesma** - 3rd, **dekesma** - 10th, **dekeduesma** - 12th, **centesma** - 100th, **milesma** - 1000th, **omna duesma dio** - every second day

Cardinals and ordinals can be used as nouns or adverbs by adding **-o** or **-e**: **uno** - a unit, **duo** - a couple, **trio** - a trio, **dekeduo** - a dozen, **unesmo** - the first one, **une** - in one manner, **unesme** - firstly, **dekesmo** - the tenth. Note the stress shift in the following two forms: **miliono** [mi-li-O-no] - million, **biliono** [bi-li-O-no] - billion

Fractions are formed by the suffix **-im**: **duimo** - a half, **quarimo** - a quarter, **dekimo** - a tenth part, **centimo** - a hundredth, **du triimi** - two-thirds, **sep okimi** - seven-eighths

Multiples are formed by the suffix **-opl**: **duopla** - double, **centopla** - hundredfold, **multopla** - manifold

Distributives are formed by the suffix **-op**: **quaro** - in fours/ four at a time, **poko** - little by little, **vorto** - word for word

The word *times* in counting is translated **foye**: **unfoye** - once, **dufoye** - twice, **trifoye** - three times, **centfoye** - a hundred times

When used as prefixes the numerals (except 3, **tri**) have special forms: **mono-**, **bi-**, **tri-**, **quadri-**, **quinqua-**, **sexa-**, **septua-**, **okto-**, **nona-**: **mono-plano** (monoplane), **bi-plano** (biplane), **tri-folio** (trefoil), **quadri-pedo** (quadruped) etc.

### ***What numeral in a series? - How many-eth?***

It is a challenge to translate the following Ido sentences into English.

**Quantesma persono de la dextra extremajo en la pikturo esas vua amoratino?** - Which-number person, counting from the right edge of the picture, is your lover?

**Sinistra extremajo** → X X X X X X X X X X O X X X ←  
**Dextra extremajo**

**El esas la quaresma persono de la dextra extremajo. Elu esas Sarah.** - She is the fourth person from the right edge. She is Sarah.

**Me prenos kelkESMa specimeni por inspektar la qualeso di ica fabrikerio.** - I'll take some-few-eth specimens to test the quality of this production (line). (Meaning, as they come down the line, I'll pick one out every once in a while.)

## Participles

The present active participle ends in **-anta**: **vidanta** - seeing. The past passive participle ends in **-ita**: **vidita** - seen.

These are the two participles most frequently needed; there are six altogether, the vowels **-a-**, **-i-**, **-o-** - being used exactly as in the indicative and infinitive to form present, past, and future participles, in both the active and the passive voice. This gives us the complete set:

present: **vidanta** - seeing (act.), **vidata** - being seen (pass.)

past: **vidinta** - having seen (act.), **vidita** - seen (pass.)

future: **vidonta** - about to see (act.), **vidota** - about to be seen (pass.)

## Exempli

How old are you? - **Quante vu evas?**

I am ten (years old). - **Me evas dek (yari).**

She was thirty (years old). - **Elu evis triadek.**

When I was seven. - **Kande me evis sep.**

He is aged (elderly). - **Ilu esas evoza (grandeva).**

The aged gentleman. - **La evoza siorulo.**

I am forty years of age. - **Mea evo esas quaradek yari.**

The baby was five months old. - **La infanteto evis kin monati.**



***Konversado - Sanne Serchas Ofico - Sanne Applies for a Job***

Chefo: Bon-jorno, damzelo, sideskez!

Sanne: Danko, sioro.

Chefo: Bone. Quale vu nomesas?

Sanne: Me nomesas Sanne Jansen.

Chefo: Ed ube vu habitas, damzelo Jansen? Quo esas vua adreso?

Sanne: Me habitas ye Vermeer-strado numero 12 (dek-e-du), Amsterdam.

Chefo: Ka vu naskis en Amsterdam?

Sanne: No. Me naskis en Alkmaar.

Chefo: Hm. Quante vu evas, damzelo Jansen?

Sanne: Me evas dek e non yari.

Chefo: Por ca ofico, on bezonas bona generala savo. Ka vu havas interesi o hobii?

Sanne: Me koquas. Speciale Italiana manjaji. Me ludas teniso, e me ofte natas en la maro.

Chefo: Ka vu prizas muziko? Forsan vu mem pleas muzikala instrumento?

Sanne: Yes, me havas gitaro. Ma me ne pleas olu tre bone.

Chefo: Ka vu savas stranjera lingui?

Sanne: Yes, me parolas kelkete la Hispana. Me anke parolas Ido.

Chefo: Me ne savas multo pri Ido. Dicz a me pri ol...

***De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 08***

Maxim bone on lernas linguo, se on lektas olu laute tam ofte kam posible.

Matine me levas me sempre tre frue. Ofte ilu kushas su vespere tre tarde.

Quale standas la malad infanti?

Me ne savas, regretinde me ne ja povis vizitar li.

Multa homi parolas bone, ma agas male. Ne omna bel uceli kantas bele.

Ni volas restar kune ankore dum kelka tempo.

Ka vi ne volas kelke repozar, vi certe esas fatigita (tired).

Ni dankas pro la jentil invito, ma ni prefere volas marchar por balde arivar adheme.

"Ka ne es tre interesanta", dicis recente drinkero, "ke intence me drinkas nur blanka vino, e tamen mea nazo divenas sempre plu reda?"

Kande la profesoro es maxim distraktita (distracted)?

Kande lu pozas sua shui aden la lito, ma kushas su ipsa avan la pordo, e remarkas l'eroro erste ye la sequanta matino, kande la servisto komencas brosar e cirajizar (black/polish) lu.

### ***De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 09***

Quante es duadek-e-tri plus non?  $23 + 9 = ?$

Duadek-e-tri plus non esas triadek-e-du.  $23 + 9 = 32$

Quante es cent minus quaradek-e-quar?  $100 - 44 = ?$

Cent minus quaradek-e-quar esas kinadek-e-sis.  $100 - 44 = 56$

Un yaro havas triacent e sisadek-e-kin dii. 365 dii

Un dio konsistas ek un jorno ed un nokto.

La unesma dio dil semano es sundio, la duesma es lundio, l'altra dii es mardio, merkurdio, jovdio, venerdio e saturdio.

Un duimo ed un quarimo es tri quarimi.  $1/2 + 1/4 = 3/4$

Vu debas a me dek franki e sepadek centimi.  $10 \text{ franki} + 70 \text{ centimi}$

Triople tri es non.  $3 \times 3 = 9$

Quante es nonople kin? Nonople kin es quaradek-e-kin.  $9 \times 5 = 45$

Nokte la policisti marchas duoape. Ka vu povas dicar a me qua

kloki esas?

Es nun precize tri kloki duadek. Me levas me omnadie ye kin kloki e duimo.

Me manjas ye sis kloki e me komencas laborar ye sis kloki e duimo.

- "Mea unesma malado konsultis me cadie", dicis la yuna mediko.

- "Me gratulas", dicis la olda mediko, "pro qua maladeso lu sufris?"

- "Me vere povis trovar nul indiko (indication) di maladeso."

- "Ka vu dicis to a lu?"

- "Yes, certe."

- "Vu ne ja lernis sat multe por esar mediko."

### ***De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 10***

El departos morgo. Kande tu pagos tua debi (debts)?

Me pagos li tam balde kam [ke lo] esos a me, posibla.

Ni montros a vi, omna (all) nia nova vari (wares).

Ni montros a vi omnu (each one of you), nia nova vari (wares).

Se me ne venos morgo, lore me venos posmorgo.

Ka vu akompanos me til la staciono? Yes, me akompanos vu tre volunte.

A: "Vu certe perdos vua stomako-dolori, se vu drinkos omnadie de mea nova vino."

B: "Me ja probis ol, ma me preferas mea stomako-dolori."

(vehar - to go about in any sort of vehicle: ride, drive, sail.)

Filologo vehis per batelo e questionis la batelisto: "Ka vu savas la gramatiko?"

"No", respondis la batelisto.

La filologo replikis (replied): "La duimo di tua vivo esas perdita."

Balde la batelo forte tremeskis pro komencanta tempesto.

"Ka vu savas natar?" nun dicis la batelisto.

"No", konfesis la filologo.

"Takaze vua tota vivo esos perdita", esis la respondo dil batelisto.

Du amiki iris pede a la chefurbo. Arivinte vespere aden mikra vilajo, li questionis quante ankore distas la chefurbo.

Duadek kilometri, on dicis a li. "To es tro multe.", dicis l'unu, "Ni volas restar hike dum la nokto, e ni duos nia voyajo morge."

Ma l'altru respondis: "Ni povos ankore tre bone irar til ibe, to ya esos nur dek kilometri por singlu de ni."

## ***Lesson 15 - Dek-e-kinesma Leciono***

### **Perfect Tenses**

The perfect tenses of the verb, expressing the completion of an action, are formed by means of the verb suffix **-ab-**, placed after the root and before the grammatical ending:

**Me parolabis.** - I had spoken.

**Ilu finabos.** - He will have finished.

The perfect imperative, for the completion of an order, does not exist in English, and requires word and syntax juggling to express. In Ido, the perfect imperative is simple and clear:

**Finabez, kande me arivos.** - Be finished/done when I (shall) arrive.

The conditional tense ends in **-us**:

**Me kredus.** - I would believe.

**Me donus.** - I would give.

The conditional perfect takes the **-ab-** verb suffix:

**Elu enfalabus.** - She would have fallen in.

**Me kredabus.** - I would have believed. **Me donabus.** - I would have given.

For the present perfect the ordinary past is used:

**Ton quon me skribis me skribis.** - What I have written, I have written.

=> **Me skribis to quon me skribis.** - I have written that which I have written. (I wrote what I wrote.)

### ***Progressive Verbs***

The progressive forms (I am speaking, I was speaking) may be translated literally, but in most languages the simple forms of the verb are sufficient, as they are in Ido:

**Me parolas** - I speak, I am speaking.

**Me parolis** - I spoke, I was speaking, I have spoken.

**Me parolos** - I shall speak, I shall be speaking.

**Me parolus** - I should (or would) speak, I should be speaking.

The future participle suffix **-onta** translates the English *to be about to*, *to be going to*:

**Me esas parolonta.** - I am going to speak.

**Ilu esis parolonta.** - He was about to speak.

**Kelka homi esas sempre o manjanta, o quik manjonta, o jus manjinta.** - Some people are always either having a meal, or just going to have one, or just having had one.

The emphatic forms are translated by the Ido simple forms reinforced by the adverb **ya** (*indeed*):

**Me ya askoltas.** - I do listen, I am listening.

**Me skribis ya.** - I did write.

**Me atencis ya.** - I was paying attention.

**Venez ya.** - Do come!

## **Vortifado**

**dis-** (separation, dissemination): **disdonar** - to distribute (by hand), **dissekar** - to dissect **dissendar** - distribute (by letter)

**des-** (the contrary of any action, quality, etc.): **des-honoro** - dishonor, **desplezar** - to displease, **desfacila** - difficult, **desespero** - despair, **despruvar** - to disprove, **deskovrar** - to uncover, **desaparar** - to vanish

**ne-** (really an adverb meaning *not*, is much used as a prefix to indicate negation. It differs widely from **des-**, which marks the *direct opposite*): **nekredebla** - incredible, **vole o nevole** - willy-nilly. There is all the difference in the world between a piece of evidence that does not prove a charge (**atesto nepruvanta**) and one that disproves it (**atesto despruvanta**).

**sen-** (a preposition meaning *without*, is also used as a prefix having the value of the English -less): **senpaga** - gratuitous, **senviva**

- lifeless, **senhara** - hairless

**mi-** (half): **mihoro** - half-an-hour, **miapertita** - half-open/ajar

**mis-** (wrongly, amiss): **mislektar** - to misread, **mispozar** - to misplace (Note the verb **egarar**, to mislay).

**-ach-** (pejorative, giving a bad sense): **populacho** - populace, **ridachar** - to guffaw, **skribachar** - to scrawl

### ***Exempli***

You look pale. - **Vu aspektas pala.**

Are you unwell? - **Ka vu esas nesana?**

I have a cold. - **Me havas kataro.**

I have caught cold. - **Me prenis kataro.**

Don't stand in the draught. - **Ne restez en la aer-fluo.**

Send for the doctor. - **Querigez la mediko.**

Are you often ill? - **Ka vu esas ofte malada?**

No, very seldom. - **No, tre rare.**

I don't remember being ill since I was a child. - **Me ne memoras esir malada depos mea infanteso.**

Last year I had a cold in the head. - **Lasta-yare, me havis nazkataro.**

I had to stay at home for two days. - **Me mustis restar en la domo dum du dii.**

But I did not go to bed. - **Ma me ne restis en la lito.**

### ***Salutado***

Bon jorno, sioro. - Bona vespero, amiko.

Bona nokto, damzelo. - Me tre joyas vidar vu.

Me regretus, se me jenus vu. - Ja depos longa tempo me ne vidis vu.

Voluntez enirar, sioro. - Sideskeze, me pregas vu. - Facez a me ta plezuro.

Ka vu ja volas forirar? - Voluntez balde skribar a me.

Multa saluti a vua spozo. - Rekomendez me a vua patro.

Kun plezuro, sioro.

Dormez bone, kar amiko. - Til rivido, morgue vespere. - Adio, sioro.

### ***La stando***

Quale vu standas, sioro? - Me dankas, me standas tre bone.

Quale standas vua spozo? - Lu es kelke maladeta. Lu tusas (coughs).

Karlo havas dento-dolori. Vu ne havas bona mieno. - Me havas kapo-dolori.

Vu esas rauka (hoarse). - Ka vu havas febri? - Ka vu ja konsultis la mediko?

Yes, lu dicis, ke me bezonas ante omno repozo.

Me neplus darfas fumar e me devas promenar ofte en la fresh aero.

Obediez exakte lua konsili por ke vu balde esez itere sana.

### ***Konversado en taverno***

J: Danko pro la biro, Paul. Me prizas ca taverno multe.... Bone, ube tu pasis tua vakanco?

P: Ni iris a Francia.

J: Ka vu esis en la sudo o la nordo?

P: En la sudo, naturale.

J: Quala la vetero esis? Tre varma, sendubite. Ta fortuneza homi qui...

P: No, Malega. Pluvegis. Ni ne vidis la suno.

J: Ka vere? Me kredis ke la vetero es sempre bela en la sudo di Francia.

P: Ne ca yaro... Se me komprenis bone, Johan, tu ne iris adexterlande.



J: Ho ve, no! Me restis en Nederlando. Ma la vetero esis varma e la suno brilis. Mea nevulo - la filio di mea fratino - vakancis che me.

P: Quale ilu nomesas, tua nevulo?

J: Frank. Ilu evas dek e du e kreskas rapide. E me nultempe vidis tala apetito! Me pasis duimo de mea vakanco en la manjajo-butiki.... Ma askoltez! Me ne audis omno pri Francia. Do, malgre la vetero, ka tu juis tua seĝorno en Francia?

P: Fakte, no. Mea amorato abandonis me.

J: Quo! Ta blondino. Quale elu nomesas? Jannie, ka ne?

P: Yes. Elu renkontris ula kerlo sur la plajo, e foriris a Paris kun ilu.(kerlo = fellow, chap, blighter(Br.) / guy(US))

J: Ne vere! Desfortunoza tu!

P: Me retrovenis de Francia sole.

J: He, Paul! Askoltez! Ne trublez tu pri Jannie. Obliviez el! Esas multa altra junini en la mondo.

P: Yes, me supozas ke tu es justa.

J: Bone. Me konocas tre atraktiva damzelo qua nomesas Katrien, e me savas ke, prezente, elu serchas nova amorato...

## De Lernolibro Italiana - 1

Homulo (patro, viro) o homino (matro, muliero, amazono) esas homo.

Infantulo od infantino esas infanto.

En la familio on trovas patro, matro e filii, qui es filiuli o filiini.

On uzas bovi por l'agrokultivo. (~1925 in Italy)

La bovi esas tre utila, nam li donas lakto e butro.

La vivo di la homi esas kurta ed ofte plena de chagreni (grief).

Ili havas fratuli, ma ne fratini, ed eli havas fratini, ma ne fratuli.

Me havas ankore tri avi.

## De Lernolibro Italiana - 2

On ne povas vivar sen manjar.

Me tre prizas, sidante (sitting) sur la teraso di la domo, regardar la promenanti (walkers), qui pasas avan me.

On dicas ke ta rejino havas tre granda benigneso (kindness) por la povri.

Ta qua volas esar felica, devas esar vertuoza (virtuous).

L'artisti e la ciencisti esas grande utila a la homi.

Certe ilu havas grava motivi por agar tale.

Ti quin me vidas ek la dansantini, ne esas bela, nek gracioza.

Ta personi vestizas su tre stranje.

Vu desordinas to quon elu ordinas tante bone.

## De La Lernolibro Italiana - 3

Quon vu facis hiero? Me repozis.

Quon vu drinkis? Me drinkis poka vino e multa aquo.

E quon tu manjis? Me manjis poka karno ma multa pano.

Adube on pozis mea imprimuri (prints)?

Ka vu prizas la rankoremi (rancorous) e la venjemi (vengeful)?

Pos dormir multe, ilu volis departar.

Ka vu regardis ta bela skulturi (sculptures)?

El sufragas de nevralgio (neuralgia) faciala (facial).

Li es tre kurajoza (courageous) e vertuoza (virtuous).

Ne trovinte mea libri, me prenis la tui (= le tua\*).

Arivinte ye la pedo di la monteto, ni haltis. Vu pagis to tre chere.

Il prenis la maxim bela sigari e lasis le mikra (= la mikri\*).

\*When you want to drop a plural noun, as in **la tua (libri)**, you have to indicate the plurality by changing either the article **la** to **le**

or the adjective **-a** to **-i** as **le tua** or **la tui**, because **la tua** usually means **la tua librO** not **la tua librI**.

## De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 11

Cadie/Hodie ni promenus, se la vetero (weather) esus bela.

Tu certe parolus altre, se tu savus la vereso.

Volunte me lokacus (would rent) ica bela chambro, se olu esus min chera.

Por tala chambro vu mustas pagar omnaloke la sam preco, nulu povus donar a vu chambro plu chipa en ta quartero dil urbo.

Mea fratino esus kontenta, se elu neplus esus malada.

Ka tu laborus, se tu esus richa? Yes, me laborus por mea plezuro.

Ma Anna, me ne povas komprenar pro ke tu ja nun tante ofte disputas kun tua fiancito. On ya povus kredar ke vi ja esas mariajita (married).

"Pro quo la fishi es muta?" studento questionis sua kamarado (comrade).

"Naiva questiono!", esis la respondo, "Ka tu povus parolar, se tu havus la boko plena de aquo?"

Kreditanto: "Vu ne povus vehar en tante bel automobilo, se vu pagus vua debi."

Debanto: "To es vera, me joyas ke vu havas la sam opiniono quale me."

Spozino: "Me jus recevis mea fotografuri, ma me forjetos li, me aspektas quale se me esus dek yari plu olda."

Spozulo: "Tu ya povus konservar li dum dek yari, e pose uzar li."

## ***Lesson 16 - Dek-e-sisesma Leciono***

### **Objects and the Accusative Ending -n**

The accusative ending **-n** is used to make clear who is doing the action and who is receiving it. Using the ending **-n**, you can change the word order to vary the emphasis. Whenever the object precedes the subject in a sentence, use **-n** ending to show which is which:

**Me amoras tu.** - I love you.

**Tun me amoras. Tun amoras me.** - It is YOU whom I love (not anybody else).

**Amoras me tu.** - It is love that I give you.

**Amoras tun me.** - It is love you are getting from me.

Using the accusative ending any time the object is at the left side of the verb increases the clarity of the sentence:

**Me tun amoras.** (**Me tu amoras** is gramatically correct, though.)

**Kande me en tala cirkonstanco kontre mea povreso tun amoris, tu refuzis....** - When in such circumstances contrary to my needs, I loved you, you refused....

**Tu esforcis men amarar dum ke me supozis ke tu amoris l'altru. Ho, ve!** - You strove (tried) to love me while I was thinking that you loved another. Oh my goodness gracious!

You can also add the **-n** ending when the meaning is too ambiguous.

**Me helpos tu vice (instead of) tua fratulo, nam (for) tua fratulo es tre okupata.** - I will help you instead of your brother (helping you), for your brother is very busy.

**Me helpos tu vice tua fratulon, nam me preferas tu kam tua fratulo.** - I will help you instead of (helping) your brother, for I prefer you to your brother.

## The Passive Voice

The *passive voice* is formed with the verb *to be* followed by passive participle:

**La puero esas amata.** - The boy is loved.

**La puero esis amata.** - The boy was loved.

**La puero esos amata.** - The boy will be loved.

The *perfect tenses in passive voice* are formed with the verb suffix **-ab-**:

**La puero esabis amata.** - The boy had been loved.

**La puero esabos amata.** - The boy will have been loved.

### Contractions with -esas

All these forms can be contracted by adding the verb **esas** (*to be*) directly to the root: **La puero amesas.** - The boy is loved.

However, contracting the **-ab-** forms in passive voice are clumsy and hard to follow in conversation. Therefore:

**La puero esabos amata** is preferred to **La puero amesabos**.

The present passive participle is most used, but the others are occasionally required. For example, the past perfect passive can be translated with the help of the past participle:

**La puero esis amita.** - The boy had been loved (literally, the boy was a was-loved-person).

The future passive participle suffix **-ota** is used in the same way as the suffix **-onta** is used in the active voice, to translate *about to be*, *going to be*:

**Olu esas facota.** - It is about to be done.

**La letro esas skribota.** - The letter is going to be written.

The contracted passive is useful in sentences like the following:

**Ica vorto uzesas rare.** - This word is seldom used.

It is frequently neater and clearer to avoid the passive by using the

pronoun **on** (one, they, people) with an active verb:

**On trovas diamanti en India.** - (*active*) One finds diamonds in India, (*passive*) Diamonds are found in India.

The preposition *by* after a passive verb is always translated by **da**:

**Olu esas recevita da li.** - It has been received by them.

The preposition *of* (possessive and genitive case) is **di**; *from* is **de**.

This is Peter's book, received by Paul from John. - **Ita esas la libro di Petro recevita da Paulo de Johano.**

The reception of the President of the French Republic by the King of England. - **La acepto di la Prezidanto(n) di la Franca Republiko da la Rejo di Anglia.**

### ***Participles as Nouns***

Like other adjectives, the participles can be changed into nouns of the same sense by changing the final **-a** into **-o** or **-i**:

**La parolanto esas la urbestro.** - The man-now-speaking is the mayor.

**La kantanto es yunino.** - The person now singing is a young lady.

**La disputanti aceptis arbitro.** - The contending parties accepted arbitration.

**La batato kriis, ma la batanto duris sua batado.** - The one-who-was-being-beaten cried, but the one-who-was-beating continued his beating.

**La regnati expresas granda kontenteso pri la agi di sua regnanti.** - The subjects (those governed) express great satisfaction with the acts of their rulers.

They can also form adverbs of manner by changing **-a** into **-e**:

**Ni progresas astonante.** - We are progressing astonishingly (wonderfully).

**Audante la informo, ilu iracis.** - Hearing the news, he got angry.

## Vortifado

**-et-** (forms diminutives, marking smallness and changing the idea of the root): **domo** - house, **dometo** - cottage, **rivero** - river, **rivereto** - brook, **kantar** - to sing, **kantetar** - to hum, **ridar** - to laugh, **ridetar** - to smile.

**-et** also serves to form *pet-names*: **matro** - mother, **matreto** - mamma, **Johano** - John, **Johaneto** - Johnny/Jack.

**-eg-** (forms augmentatives, the opposite of diminutives, denoting largeness with a change in the idea of the root): **domo** - house, **domego** - mansion, **pluvo** - rain, **pluvego** - downpour.

**arki-** (denotes pre-eminence): **arkiepiskopo** - archbishop, **arkianjelo** - archangel, **arkiduko** - archduke, **arkifripono** - arch rogue.

**-estr-** (head of, chief of): **urbestro** - mayor, **navestro** - ship's master, **policestro** - chief constable.

The two following two affixes (**-ind-**, **-end-**) should be grouped with the participle **-ot-** *about to be*.

**-ind-** (worthy to be ...): **estiminda** - estimable, **aminda** - lovable, **kredinda** - credible.

**-end-** (that must be ..., is to be ...): **lektenda** - that must be read, **Me havas nulo skribenda**. - I have nothing to write (that must be written).

Thus, a problem to be solved (**solvenda**) is possibly not about to be solved (**solvota**) nor even worthy of solution (**solvinda**).

**-es-** (forms nouns having the sense *state, condition, quality*):

**sanesar** - to be healthy

**saneso** - health

**avareso** - avarice

**beleso** - beauty

**qualeso** - quality

**konstrukteso** - (state of) construction [compare **konstrukto**, (act of) construction]

**konverteso** - conversion (act of being converted)

**okupeso** - state of being busy, occupation

### ***Exempli***

What is your name? - **Quale vu nomesas?**

I am called John. - **Me nomesas Johano.**

Where do you come from? - **De ube vu venas?**

What is your father's name? - **Quale nomesas vua patro?**

Where were you born? - **Ube vu naskis?**

I was born in London. - **Me naskis en London.**

When were you born? - **Kande vu naskis?**

I was born in 1897. - **Me naskis en mil e oka-cent e nona-dek e sep.**

Where do you live? - **Ube vu habitas?**

I live at the sea-side. - **Me habitas an la mar-bordo.**

### ***Konversado - An la Tablo***

Sro Brandsma: Mm. La torto esas bona! Ube tu kompris ol?

Sno Brandsma: Me ne kompris olu. Ma facis ol!

Sro B: Olu esas bonega. Ka tu lektis la jurnalo hodie?

Sno B: No. Me esis tro okupata. Ka ulu importanta eventis?

Sro B: Esas altra milito en Sud-Amerika. La Papo esas malada, ma ne grave. La chefa ministro probable vizitos Chinia en junio.

Sno B: Ka esas irga informo pri la mikra puerino qua desaparitis ye sundio?

Sro B: No. La policisti serchas tra la boski en la regiono di elua hemo. (boski - small bushes)

Sno B: Ka on opinionas ke ulu ocidis el?

Sro B: Me ne savas, mea karino. Voluntez pasigar la salo e la pipro!

Sno B: Ka tu deziras glaso de cidro?



Sro B: Yes. Me queros la botelo. Ube olu esas?

Sno B: En la koqueyo. Ka tu rimemoras quo esas ye la televiziono canokte?

Sro B: Yes. Ye 8 kloki es filmo. Un (filmo) tre anciena kun Elvis Presley. Ye la altra kanelo es faktala filmo pri minacata animalo-speci.

Sno B: Me preferas savar pri la animali kam askoltar Elvis.

Sro B: Bone, to konvenas a me.

## **De Lernolibro Italiana - 4**

Hiere ilu venis kom privato, ma morgue ilu venos kom reĵo.

Kad ulu negas ke la vivanti e la mortonti esos ul-die desaparinti?

Ica brosililo ne brosas tam bone kam ita.

La rentierino (stockholder) regardis amoze (affectionately) sua rozieri. (rozieri - rose bushes)

On bersas (rocks) l'infanteti por dormigar li.

Ni bezonas aquo por lavar e netigar ta chambri.

Uli esperas divenor richa sen laborar.

Omna ta objekti esas bela; ma certe ici plu plezos a nia fratino kam iti.

Vu pozas la supuyo (tureen) adsur la tablo.

Quale vu standas, siorulo? Tre bone, danko siorino.

Vu sufras, me vidas lo (= ke vu sufras) bone.

## **De Lernolibro Italiana - 5**

Se la yunaro savus e se la oldaro povus, dicas la proverbo.

Preferez libro instruktiva kam libro amuziva.

Quon vu havas facenda? Me havas nur un letro skribenda e du karti sendenda.

Quon vu trovis en la chambro? Nulo. Se vu sideskus, vu esus plu bone.

Me ne volas sideskar, nam me dormeskus.

Omna Kristani es membri di Kristo, dicas l'eklezio Kristana.

Inter omna ta kozi, quin vi selektos?

Venez kun me che mea patro por ke ilu esez kontenta.

Ta ligno sponjatra ne esas mem brulebla; olu donus nula varmeso.

Ka vu ne sufras?, vu paleskas e redeskas sucede (in turn).

Sideskez e repozez; me volas lo (= ke vu sidez e repozez).

## **De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 12**

Venez e helppez me. Ne plorez, infanto. Ne ridez sempre.

Vizitez balde tua kamarado. Lernez memore omna vorti e frazi.

Atencez la expliki (explanations). Skribez plu bele.

Ni irez lente adheme, nam es ja dek-e-ok kloki (6:00 p.m.).

Ne dormez kun boko apertita.

Obediez la saja konsili di tua genitori.

Imperez ke ilu tacez (should be silent).

Li venez e naracez omna detali pri l'acidento.

Dicez a me la nomo di vua vicino (neighbour).

Mea vicino nomesas Miller.

Por ke ni povez balde parolar Ido, oportas ke ni tre ofte lektez laute.

Matro: "Quale tu povas dicar al onklino ke elu esas stulta. Quik irez e dicez ad elu ke tu regretas."

La mikra Henriko: "Kar onklino, me regretas ke tu es stulta."

Koquistino bruligis peco de karno qua pezis du kilogrami.

Al patrono (employer) elu dicis ke la kato manjis la karno.

La patrono pozis la kato adsur la balanco, lu pezis precize du

kilogrami.

"Videz", lu dicis, "yen la du kilogrami de karno, ma ube es nun la kato?"

"Enirez, enirez!", klamis (shouted) vendisto di vesti a rurano (peasant) qua stacis dum kelk instanti (moments) exter la vetrino (show-case) por REGARDAR (look at attentively) la vari (wares) estalita (displayed), "Hike vu recevos la maxim bona vari ye la maxim basa preci."

Rurano: "Ka vu havas kamizi (shirts)?"

Vendisto: "Yes, yes, belega kamizi."

Rurano: "Ka li esas neta?"

Vendisto: "Komprenende, komprenende, tre neta."

Rurano: "Voluntez do metar (put on) un de ta neta kamizi."

## Lesson 17 - Dek-e-sepesma Leciono

### Objects and the Accusative Ending -n, Again

As you know quite well, a lion is an animal - **leono esas bestio**, but an animal is not necessarily a lion - **bestio ne sempre esas leono**. But why? *Is* here really means *belong to* or *be a member of a group*. A lion belongs to the class of animals. But an animal does not automatically belong to the class of lions.

**Leono apartenas a bestio (tigro, elefanto, gorilo, leono, kato, hundo....)**

**Leono esas bestio ma bestio ne necese esas leono, nam *esar* ne egalesas "=".**

When you want to tell someone *A lion is an animal, not a fish*, you can say either **Ye animalo esas leono** or **Animalon esas leono**.

For verbs such as *be* and *become* which link two nouns (e.g., X is/becomes Y), it is often important to distinguish X (the subject) from Y (the complement). The preposition **ye** or the ending **-n** (normally the accusative) marks the complement when necessary.

This happens when the complement precedes the subject:

**Quon (= Ye quo) divenas hano? (Quo (complement) ← hano (subject))**

**Lu divenas rostajo o vek-horlojo.**

But: **Quo divenas hano? (Quo (subject) → hano (complement))**

**Ovo divenas hano.**

However, with **esar** this is not done unless there is a definite distinction between subject and complement:

**Quo es leono? - What is a lion? (Asking for a definition.)**

**Quon (Ye quo) esas leono? - A lion is what? (Asking for a classification: a lion is part of the cat family, is a carnivore, etc.)**

These descriptions cannot be reversed; a lion is a carnivore, but a carnivore is not necessarily a lion. The complement in these cases is broader than the subject, or includes the subject, as the class of carnivores includes lions.

### **More Brain-Twisters:**

**Quon esas vu? Quon > Vu : Me esas studento e samtempe anke yunulo.**

Ica questiono signifikas ke *quon* (studento, yunulo) kontenas *vu*.

**Quo esis vu? Quo < Vu : Lore ociemo esis me, ma nun laboremo esas me**

Ica questiono signifikas ke *vu* konsistas ek (ociemo, laboremo, edc.).

When **esas** doesn't mean *belongs to* but really means *equals*, you need not be too specific but can simply say **Quo** (*instead of Quon*) **esas vu?**

**Quo esas vu? Quo =< vu? (vu1, vu2, quo, vu4, vu5) : Me esas studento.**

### **Final Twisters:**

**Ico es pro ke me amoras tu.**

**Ico es [kauzo] pro ke me amoras tu.**

**Ico/Ica kauzo/ (leono) es kauzo (bestio) pro ke me amoras tu.**

- This reason belongs to many reasons why I love you.
- This is one of the reasons why I love you.

**Icon esas pro ke me amoras tu.**

**Icon esas [kauzi] pro ke me amoras tu.**

**Icon/Ica kauzon/ (bestio) esas kauzi (leono, tigro..) pro ke me amoras tu.**

- To this reason belongs all the reasons why I love you.
- This is the very reason why I love you.

**Anekdoto - rakontita da B.Y.T.**

En antiqua India ed en ula vilajo vivis quar blindi ma tre erudita.

Ye ula dio a la vilajo venis unesmafoye elefanto e li renkontris l'elefanto.

Omnu de li quik tusheskis l'elefanto nam pro brulanta kuriozes.

La unesma blindo tushis la rostro (trunk) di l'elefanto e balde dicis:

Elefanto similesas a klariono (military bugle).

La duesma blindo ya tushis la korpo (body) di l'elefanto ed interruptis:

No! No! Elefanto mustas esar la granda muro di edificio (building).

La triesma blindo ya tushis gambo (leg) di l'elefanto e klamis:

No! No! No! Elefanto povas esar kolono (pillar) di domo (house).

La quaresma blindo hazarde tushis la kaudo (tail) e mokante dicis:

Vi stulti (fools)! Elefanto nur esas kordo (rope) ordinara.

Ye la nexta dio senkauze vizitis la vilajon kirurgo (surgeon) di "Ayurveda" e fortune suceso apertar l'okuli di la quaresma blindo.....

E lu astonate dicis pos regardir l'elefanto per sua propra okuli: - Icon esas elefanto. -

**Prepositions**

Each preposition has a well-defined meaning, and (like all words in Ido) must be used only when the sense clearly requires it: I bought it *of* \* him, becomes: I bought it *from* him. - **Me kompris olu de ilu.**

\*British English, which also has *off* him.

He cut himself *with* his knife, becomes *by means of* his knife, **Ilus sekis su per sua kultelo.**

The preposition **ye**, however, has no definite meaning, and is only to be used when no other preposition will do:

**Ye la duesma (di) marto** - On the 2nd of March.

**Ilu kaptis la kavalo ye la kolo per lazo.** - He caught the horse by the neck with a lasso.

**Me doloras ye la kapo.** - I have a head-ache (= I ache at the head).

## Conjunctions

Conjunctions are followed by whatever mood and tense are logically required:

**Se vu esus malada,** - If you were (should be) ill,

**Se vu esos malada,** - If you are (will be) ill,

**Imperez ke ilu venez.** - Order him to come (imperative).

**Restez til ke ilu venos.** - Stay until he comes (will come).

**Kande ilu departos, dicez ad ilu ...** - When he leaves (= will depart), tell him ...

**Segun ke me esos fatigita o ne, me iros kun vu.** - According as I am (shall be) tired or not, I will go with you.

**Preparez chambro pro la kazo se ilu venos.** - Prepare a room in case he comes (should come).

**En la kazo ke ilu venos, enduktez ilu.** - In case he comes (will come), show him in.

Conjunctions are often formed from prepositions by adding the word **ke**:

**pro** - because of (prep.); **pro ke** - because (conj.)

**por** - for/ in order to (prep.); **por ke** - in order that (conj.)

**dum** - during (prep.); **dum ke** - while (conj.)

**depos** - since (prep.); **depos ke** - since (conj.)

**til** - as far as/ till (prep.); **til ke** - till/until (conj.)

The prepositions (without **ke**) are used before a noun, pronoun, or infinitive; the conjunctions before a sentence:

**Depos mea mariajo,** - Since my marriage,

**Depos ke me esis mariajata**, - Since I got married,

### **Vortifado**

**pre-** (fore-, pre-, ante-): **predicar** - to foretell/predict, **preavo** - great-grandfather [compare **posnepoto** - great-grandson], **predatizar** - to ante-date

**prim-** (primitive): **primavi** - forefathers

**retro-** (back): **retrovenar** - to return/ come back, **retroirar** - to return/ go back, **retrosendar** - to return/ send back. **Retro** is used as an adverb.

**ri-** (again): **ridicar** - to repeat/say again, **ripolisar** - to repolish. the adverb corresponding to **ri-** is **itere** - again.

**-iv-** (forms adjectives signifying *able to, capable of doing*):  
**instruktiva** - instructive, **responsiva** - responsible, **sugestiva** - suggestive

**-ebl-** (forms adjectives signifying *that can be, capable of being*):  
**kredebla** - credible, **lektebla** - legible, **nesondebla** - unfathomable

**-ari-** (denotes the *indirect object* of verb (with *to* expressed or understood): **legacario** - (person *to* whom something is bequeathed).

### **Exempli**

Do you like traveling? - **Ka vu prizas voyajado?**

I seldom travel. - **Me rare voyajas.**

It is too expensive. - **Olu esas tro kustoza.**

Not so much as formerly. - **Ne tam multe kam olim.**

Do you think so, really? - **Ka vu tale opinionas, vere?**

According to my experience. - **Segun mea experienco.**

Have you visited France or Germany? - **Ka vu vizitis Francia o Germania?**



No, I don't know French or German. - **No, me ne savas la Franca nek la Germana.**

They are so hard to master. - **Li esas tante defacile aquirebla.**

It is to be hoped that everyone will soon learn Ido. - **Espereble, omnu balde lernos Ido.**

### ***Konversado - Ye Deyuneto***

Matro: Sanne, kande esos la Ido-konfero? En agosto?

Sanne: No, en julio. Ye la 21ma.

Matro: Ed ube tu dicis ke olu eventos?

Sanne: En Groningen. En la nova universitato.

Matro: Ka tu intencas asistar?

Sanne: Yes ya. La konfero en Elsnigk lasta-yare esis bonega. E ca-yare me esperas rividar omna mea amiki.

Matro: Ka ta yunulo de Suisia asistos ca-yare? Quale ilu nomesas? Erich, ka ne?

Sanne: Me ne es certa. Me skribis ad il, ma til nun ilu ne respondis. Ma me savas ke Jean e Marie-Claire de Francia asistos. E Andreas de Suedia. Qua kloko es? Me ne deziras perdar la autobuso.

Matro: Esas sep kloki e duimo. Tu havas sat multa tempo. Tu levis tu plu frue hodie.

Sanne: Me sempre levas me frue! - specale nun ke (now that) la vetero (weather) esas plu varma (warm) e la jorni plu sunoza (sunny).

Matro: Quale tua chefo standas?

Sanne: Sioro Brink? Ilu ne esis en la kontoro hiere. Ilu iris ad ula kunveno ulaloke kun la nova sekretariino. Ube ilu obtenis el, me ne savas. Elu savas nulo. Ed elu esas tam ociema. Me facas la vera laboro. Avan il, elu portas quaze inocenta mieno (countenance). Ed elua min kam decanta vesti.... (ociema - lazy, decanta - decent)

Matro: Sanne, la autobuso!

## De Lernolibro Italiana - 6

Kande ni esabis vere tranquila e laborema dum un tota semano, la skolestro rekompensis ni.

El esis malada hiere, pro ke elu tro manjabis prehiere.

La lekteri di ta jurnalos ja plendabis pro olua inklineso a la materialismo.

Kande vu arivabos hike, belega pejzajo charmos vua vidado.

Se ta arbori fruktifabus dum la lasta yari, me tre certe ne tranchabus oli.

Qua dicis to quon produktabus la pensado di ula ciencisti, se on helpabus li plu bone?

Multa fumeri mortas de kancero. Nulo trublas mea matro.

La skolani ne ja esas arivinta. Me ne plus bezonas ta brosilos.

## De Lernolibro Italiana - 7

Pro quo vu redeskas?

Ka vu shamas esar laudata?

Me ne opinionas esir tro rekompensata.

Ni ne esperis esar tante kordiale aceptata da lia bofratulo.

Li pensos pri to, kande ilu esabos admisata hike.

La kavali esas lojigata en la kavalejo e la mutoni en la mutonejo.

Li ne esas respektinda e, konseque, ne aminda.

La paravento ne esabus lacerata, se vu pozabus olu altraloke.

Omna cirkuleri ja esabis disdonata.

Questionite, la exkapitano respondis to ad elu konfidence e mi-voce.

Singlu deziras esar amata.

Vu esos lojigata che mea bomatro.

La legacario (legatee) ne ja es konocata.

## De Lernolibro Italiana - 8

Dum ke li abandonesis da omni, mea bo-matro (mother-in-law) sokursis (comes to the aid of when in danger) li en lia abandoneso.

On dicas ke to predicesis (was predicted) da nia pre-onklino (great aunt).

Tam longe kam la tero duros, ta fakto sempre ridicesos por honorizar lua memoreso.

De ilu tala miskompreni astonas pro lua granda instrukteso.

Lore nia genitori laudesis, kontre ke li nun blamesas.

La konvinkeso produktita en me da vua argumenti efektigis mea konverteso.

Vi ne ludos, pueri, til ke ca leciono esabos parlernata.

Depos ke ta domo konstruktesis hike, lua arkitekto ocidesis. Kad ico astonas vu?

Da qua ico pozesis adsur la tablo?

Ta floro ne es rozea ma violea.

Quon esos o quon divenos tal autoritato?

## De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 13

Kavalo, kavalulo, kavalino. Kato, katulo, katino.

Me havas tri frati, du fratini ed un fratulo.

La seniora fratino es mediko, la juniora fratino esas telefonisto, e mea fratulo esas komercisto.

En ica skolo por pueri la pueruli e puerini instruktesas kune.

Quanta laboristi laboras en ica fabrikerio (factory)? Hike es okupata cirkume quaracent (400) laboristuli e cirkume cent-e-kinadek (150) laboristini.

Existas substantivi qui indikas nur homuli, exemple: patro, viro; altra substantivi indikas nur homini, exemple: matro, muliero, amazono, megero (vixen).

La vorto damzelo aplikesas a muliero celiba (unmarried), la vorto damo uzesas por muliero mariajita o vidvino (widow).

Kom formo di politeso (politeness) on uzas la vorto sioro por omna homi adulta, sive viri, sive mulieri.

Nur kande es necesa, on uzas siorulo o siorino.

Siori, dicas oratoro (orator) al siorini e sioruli qui askoltas lu.

Drinkero atakesis da febro qua duopligis (doubled) sua dursto.

La mediko probis desaparigar samtempe la febro e la dursto.

"Okupéz vu nur pri la febro", dicis la malado, "me ipsa sorgos pri la dursto."

## ***Lesson 18 - Dek-e-okesma Leciono***

### **Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns**

The indefinite pronouns **ula**, **ulu**, and **ulo** (some specific but unnamed thing or person) are particularly significant because of their frequent use.

**Ula** is an adjective: **ula libro** - some book (a specific book, though I either don't know or won't tell which).

**Ulu** is a pronoun referring to a person (= someone): **ulu dicis**. - someone (a certain person) said.

**Ulo** is a pronoun referring to a thing (= something): **ulo mankas** - something is wanting.

**Irga, irgu, irgo** (used in the same way as **ula, ulu, ulo**) = any whatever: **Irgo konvenos**. - Anything whatever will do.

**Kelka, kelko** = some (an indeterminate number or quantity): **kelka homi** - some men

Give me some (quantity of it). - **Donez ad me kelko**.

Note the difference between **kelka** and **poka**;

**kelka** means some, a certain amount, a few (opposed to **nula**, none);

**poka** means some, but little, few (opposed to **multa**, much).

**Omna, omnu, omno** - all/every, plural, **omni** - all: **omna homi** - all men

They all said. - **Omni dicis**.

Everyone sang. - **Omnu kantis**.

Everything is here. - **Omno esas hike**.

**Altra, altru, altro** - other:

Another time. - **Altra foyo**.

Someone else will speak. - **Altru parolos**.

Another thing will show that ... - **Altro montros ke ...**

**Nula, nulu, nulo** - none, nobody, nothing (the opposite of **ulu**, etc.).

**Singla, single** - each: **singla karti** - single cards.

**Li venis single.** - They came singly.

**dek centimi po singla** - ten pennies apiece.

The difference between **omna** and **singla** is slight, but clear; **omna** means *every* (collectively), while **singla** means *each* (distributively):

Everyone spoke, each in his own language. - **Omnu parolis, singlu en sua linguo.**

**Inter** is a preposition, but is often used as a prefix:

**Sro Max parolas inter Sro Mix e Sro Mox. Do li inter-parolas.** - Mr. Max talks with (between, among) Mr. Mix and Mr. Mox. So, they are inter-talking (exchanging communication).

Observe that *each other* can be translated as **una la altra** (in the plural **uni la altri**) when the prefix **inter-** is unsuitable:

Love one another. - **Amez uni la altri.** - **Amez kom uni la altri.**

They talked together (with each other) long. - **Li interparolis longe.**

They gave each other gifts (gave gifts each to the others). - **Li donis donaci uni a l'altri.** - **Li donis donaci kom uni a l'altri.**

Note that **unu la altra** is not a noun phrase but is really an adverbial phrase, and is used to show the sense of *as being* or *like* or *having the quality of*...

**Amez uni** - Love the *ones*, does not mean that you should love everyone, but that everyone should love (some) others. The phrase therefore means that "love" should be "*in the manner of*" (Ido **kom**) one having love for the others.

Note also that when *one* or *ones* (**unu** or **uni**) refers to not just *any*, but some *special* one or ones, you can use the phrase **la una la altra/i** or **la uni la altra/i**.

## **Vortifado**

**-aj-** (with a verbal root, marks the object of the action expressed by the verb (transitive or mixed)):

**manjajo** - food (what is eaten)

**drinkajo** - drink (what is drunk)

**chanjajo** - thing changed

With an intransitive verb it marks the subject of the action:

**rezultajo** - result (what results)

**restajo** - rest (what remains)

With a non-verbal root, it signifies a thing made of a certain matter, or possessing a certain quality:

**lanajo** - woolen article

**belajo** - beauty/ beautiful thing

**molajo** - soft part

By extension it expresses *act of*...:

**amikajo** - friendly act

**infantajo** - childish prank

**-ur-** (marks the concrete result of the action expressed by the verb):

**pikturo** - a painting

**imituro** - an imitation (made) compare with **imitajo**, the thing imitated.

**imprimuro** - printed work/ letterpress.

**fotografuro** - a photograph (picture)

**-ar-** (collection of):

**homaro** – mankind

**vortaro** - vocabulary

*One of a mass* is expressed by **-un:** **greluno** - a hailstone.

Where the elements are pieces, rather than individuals, use

**peco:** **sukropeco** - lump of sugar.

**ex-** (ex-, former):

**exkonsulo** – ex-consul

**exoficiro** - ex-officer

**-um-** (is an indefinite affix with no fixed meaning. Consult the dictionary for words in which it occurs):

**mondumo** - The World / smart society

**foliumar** - to thumb / turn over the leaves of

**kolumo** - (shirt-) collar

**nukumo** - neck-flap

### ***Exempli***

Are you a chess-player? - **Ka vu esas shak-ludero?**

I used to know the moves. - **Olim me savis la stroki.**

I have forgotten the names of the men. - **Me obliviis la nomi di la peci.**

I couldn't even castle correctly. (at chess) - **Me ne povus mem roquar korekte.**

Would you prefer to go out and enjoy the fresh air? - **Ka vu preferus ekirar e juar la fresha aero?**

Yes, indeed; the rain is over. - **Yes, certe; la pluvo cesis.**

Very well; we'll take our umbrellas, in case it begins again. - **Bone; ni prenus nia parapluvi, kaze ke olu rikomencus.**

If you are cold, we won't stay long. - **Se vu sentos vu kom kolda, ni ne restos longatempe.**

### ***Letro de Suisia***

Geneve, Suisia, la 19ma di mayo

Kara Sanne: Danko pro tua letro.

Me ne povis responder ante nun, pro ke me esis for-heme dum monato e nur recente retrovenis. Do voluntez exkuzar me.

Yes, me asistos la Ido-konfero en Groningen. Me jus regardis la programo.

La organizeri (organizers) havas nombro de bona idei.



Me previdas ke la koncerto ye la jovdio esos granda afero.

Jim Lipton prizentos sua nova Ido-kansoni (songs).

Ka tu rimemoras la kansoni di Jim en Elsnigk?

Ka tu recevis la koquo-libro quan me sendis de Venezia, e la du karti postala de Roma? - Yes, me pasis la monato en Italia.

Recente me skribis artiklo por "Progreso" pri ekologio. Ka tu lektis ol? Me recevis plura lettri gratulanta (congratulating) me pro ol. Un Idisto en Japonia volas tradukar la artiklo aden la Japona linguo por Japona revuo. Me donis mea permiso, naturale.

Quale tua genitori standas? Tua patro retretas cayare, ka ne? Quon ilu intencas agar? Se me ne eroras, ilu pasos la tota jorno sur la golfo-tereno (links).

Mea onklulo Albert esas ankore depresita pos sua operaco. Me ne kredas ke ilu asistos la Ido-konfero.

Me avide vartas rividar tu. Mea maxim kordiala saluti ad omni.

Afecionoze tua, Erich XXX

### **Questioni**

1. Ka Erich esis en Italia dum du monati? → No, dum un monato.
2. Ka ilu asistos la Ido-konfero? → Yes, ilu asistos.
3. Quo eventos ye la jovdio? → La koncerto.
4. Qua prizentos kansoni? → Jim Lipton.
5. Ka Erich skribis artiklo pri Japonia por "Progreso"? → No, pri ekologio.
6. Ka Erich sendis posto-karto de Venezia? → No, ilu sendis koquo-libro.
7. Ube esas Roma? → Roma esas en Italia.
8. Qua retretos ca yaro? → Patro di Sanne.
9. Qua es Albert? → Onklulo di Erich.
10. Kad Albert standas bone? → No, Ilu esas ankore depresita pos sua operaco.

**Questioni**

1. Se me esus richa, me ... komprus la kompanio ube me laboras.
2. Se me povus selektar irga vakanco, me ... selektus vakanco en Grekia.
3. Se me povus renkontrar ...fantomo, me olun kaptus e vendus por pekunio.
4. Se me esus en karcero (prison)..., me divenus ucelo ed eskapus.
5. Me habitus en ...Grekia, se ...me retretus.

**Generala Questioni**

1. Qua koloro esas vua okuli? → Oli esas o bruna o blua o avelanea (hazel).
2. Ka on portas (wear) pijamo en la nivo? → Komprenende ne!
3. Ka vu sentas vu kom varma prezente? → Yes, suficante varma apud herdo.
4. Quante facile vu respondis a la unesma questiono? → Sen irga problemo.
5. Quante ofte vu lektas biblioteko-libro? → 2 o 3 foyi en la semano.
6. Quante kustas marko postala por letro ordinara? → Forsan 2 o 3 marki.
7. De ube vua familio venas? → La mea ne es de aristokrataro (aristocracy).
8. En qua komtio (county) vu habitas? → En Idia di Japonia.
9. Quanta kuzin vu havas? → 10 kuzi.
10. Ka vu skribas per vua dextra o per vua sinistra manuo? → Per mea dextra.

## De Lernolibro Italiana - 9

- Quante evas ca puerulo?
- Ilu evas ok yari, e lua fratino esas dek--e-un-yara.
- Ye qua kloko li arivos?
- Ye dek e tri kloki.
- Kande la treno departos?
- Ye du kloki kinadek e sep (minuti). - 2:57
- Qua kloko nun esas?
- Esas dek e un kloki e tri quarimi. - 11:45
- Quala arborin vu plantacos (plant)?
- Me plantacos querki (oak-trees) e fagi (beech-trees).
- Quantesma dio di la monato esas?
- La duadek e nonesma (29th) o la triadekesma (30th), me ne plu savas.
- Kad vu kompris sigareti?
- Yes, sigareti po sisadek centimi ye singla pako.
- Me manjis tre poke, un bokedo (mouthful), en la imprimerio.
- Ho! Qual infantalajo!
- Ta trovajo es precoza.
- La paroko (priest) di ta parokio (parish) esas tre zeloza, quankam olda.
- Ilu restis dum tri hori. Irgu qua venos, ne accepez lu.
- Kinople ok es quara-dek.  $5 \times 8 = 40$
- La triimo di dek e kin esas kin.  $1/3 \times 15 = 5$

## De Lernolibro Italiana - 10

- Qua pozis to aden la manjo-chambro di nia gemastri?
- Tre bel aer-navo pasis super nia kapi ca-matine.
- Ka la tir-kesti (drawers) di ta moblo ne plu havas klefo?

- Quon vendis a vu ta moblisto?
- Nur quar stuli ed un mikra skribotablo.
- Kande la pluvo cesabos, forsan aparos en la nubi ciel-arko (rainbow).
- La ter-pomi (potatoes) esas manjajo precoza precize pro ke li esas chipa.
- Bon jorno, kar amiko, quale vu standas ca-die?
- La horo di la morto esas nekonocata da omna vivanti e tamen olu venas a li pokope.
- Ilu es la viro maxim maligna (malicious), quan me til nun renkontris.
- Arivez maxim rapide kam posible.
- Vu esas min laborema kam vua kuzulo, ma la minim laborema ek omni esas la filio di la vicino.
- Nulatempe, no, nulatempe on vidis tanta homi en nia vilajo.
- Donez a me kelka pekunio por komprar dekeduo (dozen) de ovi.
- Regardez ta grosega (bulky/huge) greluno (hailstone).
- La skolanin laborema ni rekompensos, ma le ocieman ni punisos severe.

## De Certena Lektolibro - Lektajo 14

La kin mondoparti nomesas: Afrika, Amerika, Australia, Azia ed Europa.

Ultre la Franca e la Germana linguo, ilu savas la linguo internaciona.

Dum un yaro e sis monati me habitis en Paris, dum un yaro me esis en Berlin, e nun me es en Zuerich.

Tolstoy esis Rusa poeto. Sokrates vivis en anciena Grekia.

Le Goethe es rara. Yen pomi, prenez le bona e lasez le mala.

Tu devas skribar plu bele, precipue le "o" e le "u" esas tro male skribita, on ya povas konfundar li.

Me ne amas la homi qui sempre uzas le "se" e le "ma", me preferas ti qui uzas le "yes" e le "no".

Alexandro Dumas, qua ne savis la Germana linguo, voyajis sur la dextra rivo dil Rheno. Uldie ilu eniris albergo (inn) en la Foresto Nigra por dinear. Ilu deziris manjar fungi, ma quale komprenigar su (make himself understood)?

Pos kelka reflektio (reflection) ilu desegnis (drew) fungo (mushroom) sur peco de papero, e montris (showed) olu al albergestro (inn-keeper).

Ica facis vivaca (lively/spirited) signi ke ilu bone komprenis ed adportis - granda parapluvo (umbrella) ad Alexandro Dumas.

## ***Lesson 19 - Dek-e-nonesma Leciono***

### **Lektajo 1**

Me lojas en alta domo. Avan la domo esas bela gardeno. Dop la domo esas korto.

La pordo esas klozita. Me havas klefo. (korto - courtyard)

La eskalero (staircase) es streta, la fluoro (staircase landing) es larja.

En la salono esas tablo, stuli, sofao e horlojo. La fenestro esas granda.

Tapiso jacas sur la sulo (= planko-sulo - floor). An la muro pendas imaji.

La plafono (ceiling) esas blanka. La patro lektas libro. Me skribas.

Me havas du fratini. La yuna/juniora (younger) fratino sutas (sews).

La granda/seniora (elder) fratino esas en la koqueyo (kitchen).

La olda avulo sidas en dorso-stulo (easy chair). La matro koquas (cooks).

En la koqueyo es multa utensili. La fairo brulas en la herdo (hearth).

La dishi es sur la pladi (plates). Flori en vazo es sur la tablo.

En la dormo-chambro esas du liti, armoro (cupboard), stuli e spegulo.

Furnelo (stove) stacas apud la pordo. Me dormas en la lito (bed).

La genitori (parents) esas bona. Me esas volunte heme.// Me prizas esar heme.

### **Lektajo 2**

On mustas flegar (take care of) sua korpo. Sana anmo lojas nur en sana korpo.

Omnadie me lavas mea vizajo, la kolo, la pektoro e la manui per sapono.

Ofte me balnas. Somere ni balnas en la fluvio (large river).

Me pektas (combs) mea hari e netigas mea denti.

Mea hari esas nigra e mea denti esas blanka.

La pelo (skin) esas bruna e la labii esas reda. Mea patro havas blonda barbo.

Vespere me promenas kun mea amiko en nia gardeno. Ni parolas la mondolinguo.

Nia okuli vidas la bela flori. La flori emisas (emits) sua agreabla odoro.

La nazo flaras lia odoro e nia oreli audas la kanto dil uceleto.

Nia pulmoni respiras la pura aero. La nervi divenas tranquila.

Cadie me iras a mea kuzulo e lua amiki.

Li kantas, ludas e rakontas interesiva rakonti. Ni es gaya.

Se pluvos, me lektas libro heme. La ventego ululas (ululates) cirkum la domo.

La nokto esas tenebroza (dark/gloomy/tenebrous).

Ma mea chambreto es lumozita (full of light) e mea kordio es joyoza, nam la libro montras a me bona homi e bela landi.

Ankore en la dormo me sonjas (dream) pri to.

### **Lektajo 3 - Vicino - Neighbor**

Hiere me vizitis nia vicini. Li esas olda. Me konocas li depos mea infanteso.

Li havis kvar filii, tri filiuli ed un filiino. Un filiulo mortis frue.

La genitoro edukis amoze (affectionately) l'altri.

La filiuli esis adolecanti, lore la mondo-milito komencis.

Ili eniris la armeo (army). L'unun balde kuglo (bullet) atingis.

Il mortis quik. L'altru retrovenis sana.

Il mariajis yunino e vivas nun kun sua spozino en altra urbo.

Nur la filiino restis che sua olda genitoro. Elu flegas li sorgeme

(carefully).

Me adportis a li frukti e dicis multa saluti de mea genitori.

La oldulo esis afabla e naracis a me pri sua yuneso.

La oldino jacis en la lito; elu esas malada.

Elua filiino adportis ad elu medikamento; ma la malado ne volis drinkar ol.

Forsan elu mortos balde. Me vizitus elu omnadie, se me povus.

La bona vicini amis me sempre. Li joyos, kande me rivenos.

### **Konverso**

A: Bona jorno, siorino!

B: Bona jorno, siorulo!

A: Quale vu standas?

B: Me dankas tre bone e quale standas vu?

A: Me esis malada e mustis konsultar la mediko; ma nun me esas sana.

B: Quon la mediko dicis?

A: Ilu dicis: "Irez ofte aden la foresto e repozez multe!"

B: La saneso es valoroza.

A: Yes, me obedios la konsilo dil mediko.

B: Til rivido, siorulo! A: Til rivido, siorino!

### **Lektajo 4**

La vespero esas koldeta. Vespere me iras rapide a la vilajo.

La rapida kavalo portas la kavalkero. Naracez a me la historio, ma kurte.

Avan la foresto esas prato (meadow). Ni kuras ad-avane. Quanta pomin tu havas?

Quante me joyas! Ica farino (flour) es blanka, ma ita es griza.

Ca floro odoras forte; iti havas bela kolori.



Ti qui ne laboras, anke devus ne manjar.

Ilca esas richa, ma elta esas povra. Me savas to. Me ne povas komprenar ico.

Ni iras a la ruo. Quante la flava cereali (cereals) stacas belege sur l'agro!

Inter la spiki on vidas blua aciani (cornflowers) e reda papaveri (poppies).

Ibe rurano falchas (mows down) la frumento (wheat).

Hike du kavali tiras plena veturo. Pomieri (apple-trees) stacas sur ca agro.

La pomi ne ja es matura, ma ta prunieri portas multa matura pruni (plums).

Dop la vilajo esas viteyo (vineyard). La vitberi (grapes) divenas dolca, nam la suno brilas varmege de la cielo (sky/heaven) sennuba.

Cirkum la vilajo esas multa legum-gardeni. En ici fazeoli (kidney-beans), pizi (peas), karoti, salado e kaulo (cabbage) kreskas.

Se la rurano ne kultivus l'agri (fields), l'urbano ne havus nutritivo.

Nun ni hungras (are hungry) e durstas (are thirsty).

En restorerio ni drinkas taso de kafeo e manjas peco de pano kun butro.

## Lektajo 5 - Lumoza Expliko

Du rurani parolis pri la telegrafo.

"Quale olu agas por transportar la novaji (news) tante rapide?

"Esas tre simpla.", l'altru respondis. "On tushas l'una extremajo (extremity) di la metalfilo (wire) e l'altra extremajo skribas quale per plumo."

"Me quik klarigos lo por tu. Ka tu havas hundo?" - "Yes."

"Quale lu aspektas?" - "Lu esas tenua (thin) e havas longa kaudo (tail)."

"Nu, kande tu fulas (tread on) la kaudo, ka lu ne aboyas?" - "Yes, certe!"

"Nu, supozez ke lua hundo esus sat longa por atingar Stockholm de tua vilajo. Esas nula dubo ke lu aboyus en Stockholm, se tu fulus lua kaudo hike. Yen to quo esas la elektrala telegrafo." (aboyar - to bark)

## **Lektajo 6 - Acensar (to get on) e Decensar (to get off) la Vagono (car)**

Cadie esas la unesma agosto, la komenco di la vakanco.

Ye venerdio ni ankore sidis sur la skolbenki e sudorifis (sweated).

Dum la lasta leciono l'instruktisto parolis pri la Nigra Foresto. Omnu ja revis pri obskura abieto-foresti e la migrado sur altaji eskarpa (steep). (abieto - fir-tree/spruce-tree)

Me recevis bona atesto e departas ca-matine kun mea fratino a nia geonkli.

La kofro ja esas preparita; parapluvo, bastono e mantelo esas pronta.

Nia patro donas a me 250 mark.

"Til rivido, kara patro; adio, bona matro! Ni skribos balde."

Yen la fervoyo-staciono! Me serchas la gicheto (wicket/ticket window) por komprar du biliati por Triberg. Li kustas 35 mark.

Amaso de voyajanti pulsas (push) sur la kayo (platform). Ni vartas la treno.

Nun la konduktoro klamas: "Atenco!" La treno arivas ye 10 kloki.

Ni acensas (go up) la vagono (car) e trovas bona plaso en libera angulo.

Pos 5 minuti la trenestro siflas (whistles). La treno moveskas.

Apertez la fenestro por ke me povez REGARDAR la bel naturo e respirar (breathe) la fresha aero. Ni vehas rapide. Vespere la treno proximeskas a staciono.

"Triberg!" Ni decensez (go down)! "Yen la biliato.", "Danko."

## Lektajo 7 - En la Hotelo - (kontoro - reception desk/ front desk)

Dum nia unesma migrado sur la montaro ni arivis due pos 9 hori an la monto-lago e ni nun acensas a la hotelo por pasar la nokto ibe. Fine, yen la hotelo. Olu stacas che 1345 metri super la maro.

En la teretajo (ground floor), apud la enireyo sinistre, esas la kontoro.

"Ka ni povas havar du chambri?"

"Yes, siori, en qua etajo vi deziras lojar?"

"Ni preferas la triesma etajo."

"Ka me darfas demandar via nomi?"

"Ni nomesas Helmut e Gertrud Naumann. Qua precon vu demandas?"

"Kinadek mark po un chambro e po dio."

"To ne esas tro chera."

"Voluntez sequar me. Numeri 37 e 38 esas libera."

"Ni enirez. Bela chambri kun vasta vido adsur la monti e vali dil cirkumajo."

"Hike esas la klosheto elektrala. La chambristino venos, se vu sonigos unfoye; pos dufoya sonigo la servistulo venos.", "Bone."

Nun ni decensas aden la manjo-salono. La supeo esas pronta.

Kelka gastu ja sidas an la tablego. Olca esas belete kovrita.

Cirkum la porcelan-plado jacas kultelo, forkteto, kuliero e boktuko (napkin).

"Garsono, adportez a ni un botelo de Rhen-vino e du glasi."

Me komendas duima hano kun legumo e desero. La manjajo esas tre bona.

"Garsono, pagar!", "La duopla supeo kutas: dek e kin mark per du esas triadek mark, pluse vino po sep mark, 30 plus 7 esas 37

mark."

"Voluntez vekigar ni ye quar kloki; ni volas vidar la sun-levo.  
Bona nokto!"

## Lektajo 8 - L'anciena Urbo

L'anciena parti di nia urbo existas ja depos la mez-epoko. Olim komto (count) invitabis komercisti por ke li establisz su an la komercala strado; nam la trafiko bezonis merkati. Richa komercisti sequabis l'invito e balde li esis konstruktinta urbo e fortifikabis (had fortified) olu per muri.

La butiki plenigis su. Anke kelka mestieristi, exemple bakisti, buchisti, masonisti, seruristi (locksmiths), taliori ed altri esis veninta.

Pokope la mestiero (trade/handicraft) florifis (blossomed). An la rivereto habitis la peskisti e la tanagisti (tanners); en streta (narrow) stradeto la shuifisti (shoemakers) fasonis (fashioned, formed) la ledro (leather). La menuzisto (cabinet-worker/joiner) fabrikis mobli en sua laboreyo, e la veturifisto veturi (vehicles). En altra stradeto la texisti (weavers) txis la telo (linen) o la lano, quan la mulieri filifabis (had spun). La potifisto (potter) e la forjisto (blacksmith/forgar) ne darfis mankar.

Quon la mastro fabrikabis, ton lu expozis avan sua domo o dop la fenestro. Olca divenis ilua vetrino (show-case).

Dum la merkato-dio granda turbo (crowd, throng) esis sur la merkato-placo. Omna komercisto e mestieristo ofris vende sua vari (wares).

La rurani vendis ligno, bestiaro, farino edc. e kambiiis (exchanged) po to vesti, ornivi (ornaments) ed utensili. La mestiero havis ora sulo (soil).\*

Se la triadek-yara milito ne destruktibus (hadn't destroyed) multo, ni povus admirar (could admire) ankore plu multa domi anciena (old) del (de+la, of the) unesma florifado (flourishing) di nia urbo.

\* "havar ora sulo" esas Germanajo. Co dicas ke "Handwerk hat

goldenen Boden". "Ora sulo" signifikas "ferma fundamento ekonomiala". Do la proverbo dicas: Per bona mestiero onu bone manjas.

## **Lektajo 9 - La Foxo e la Tortugo (tortoise), Indiana Fablo**

Olim foxo chasis apud la maro tortugo (tortoise), quan lu vidis unesmafoye.

Havante apetito por manjar sua kaptajo lu penadis parmordar (crunch completely) la harda skalio (shell), ma olua fermeso (firmness) esis plu forta kam la dentaro (set of teeth) dil foxo. Iracoze lu haltis por meditar (think over).

"La hungro tormentas me", lu dicis, "me mustas serchar altra vildo (wild game); ma antee me portos ica stranja ento (entity) a mea kaverno por pose lacerar (rend) olu quiete (calmly)." La tortugo pavoreskis (became afraid).

Lu dicis: "Severa foxo, me ya vidas ke me mustos mortar, pro to me pregas, se tu volas kurtigar mea dolori e quik facar manjajo a tu, lore pozez me aden la maro, e mea skalio (shell) divenos mola (soft), sen peno tu manjos me."

"Esas vera, tu esas justa", triumfis la foxo, "me nur astonesas ke me ipsa ne pensis a to." Lu portis la ruzozo (the sly) al maro e pozis lu aden la aquo.

Esante en sua elemento la tortugo quik eskapis. De sekura disto (distance) lu mokis la foxo, qua troteskis (fell into a trot) shamante (ashamedly).

Merkez: Anke la maxim ruzozo trovas sua mastro.

## **Lektajo 10**

L'autuno: Sempre plu multe la suno perdas sua varmeso. La nokti esas kolda, e matine blanka pruino (frost) jacas (lies) sur la prati (meadows).

Nun la kultivisto mustas hastar por rekoltar la produkturi dil agro. La frukti koliesas (are gathered). La grapi tranchesas de la viti ed

manjesas kom saporoza (succulent) donajo di la naturo o presesas en la presilo.

Dum ke la migrant uceli flugas a la sudo, por eskapar la ruda (rude) vintro, la vitkultivisti festas sua rekoltofesto per kantado e dansado.

La gardeni vakuigesas; omnaloke la terpomi ekterigesas.

Kande apene l'agri esas vakua, sekalo (rye) e frumento (wheat) semesas.

La bovi, mutoni e kapri (goats) esas duktita de la monti aden la vali; nam supre nivo (snow) falis sur la herbi. La laborinta rurano regardas kontente sua kelero (cellar) e garbeyo (barn).

"Laboro esas la ornuro dil civitano, prospero esas la rekompenco dil peno."

Balde la yuna semajo kovresos dal nivo. Ube antee la agro esis kultivita, ibe la leporo (hare) e la kapreolo (roe-deer) chasesos dal chasero (hunter).

La naturo dormeskas e vekos erste, kande la printempo (spring) vekigos ol.

## ***Lesson 20 - Duadekesma Leciono***

### **Revizo**

### **Lektajo 11 - La Tri Guti**

Alba, la bona feino [fe-I-no] (fairy), qua protektas la fianciti (fiances),

Alba, qua habitas la pupilo (pupil) blua di la virgini (virgins) inocenta, pasante ulmatine proxim rozo, audis sua nomo enuncesar da tri guti.

Proximigante su e sideskante en la kordio dil floro, elu questionis gracioze:

"Quon vi deziras de me, guti brilanta?"

"Venez por solvar questiono", dicis l'UNESMA. Alba: "Pri quo vi parolas?"

"Ni esas tri guti diferanta, de origini diversa; ni deziras ke tu dicez, qua de ni esas la maxim meritoza, la maxim pura." Konseque Alba dicis,

"Me konsentas. Parolez, guto brilanta." E la UNESMA guto dicis:

"Me venas de la nubi alta, me esas filiino di la granda mari.

Me naskis en la granda oceano antiqua e potent.

Vizitante maro-rivi (seashore) e litori (seaboard), sukusite (shaken) en mil tempesti, me absorbesis da la nubo. Me iris til l'alta regioni ube la steli brilas, e de ibe rulante (rolling) inter la fulmini (lightning), me falis aden la floro en qua me nun repozas. Me reprezentas la maro.", finis la UNESMA.

"Nun esas tua foyo, guto brilanta," la feino [fe-I-no] dicis a la DUESMA.

"Me esas la roso (dew), qua entras la lilii [LI-lyi]; me esas la fratino dil opalea (opal-coloured) lumo dil luno, la filiino dil nebulo, qua difuzesas kande la nokto obskurigas la naturo. Me reprezentas l'auroro (dawn)."

"E tu?" Alba questionis la TRIESMA, la guto minim granda e lore tacanta.

"Me havas nula merito (worth/merit)." Alba: "Parolez! De ube tu venas?"

"Ek la okuli di fancitino (fiancee); me esis la rideto, me esis la kredo, me esis la espero, pose me esis l'amoro ... cadie me esas lakrimo (tear)."

L'altri ridis pri la guteto, ma Alba, apertante sua brakii, prenis elu kun su e dicis: "Ica esas la maxim meritoza, ica esas la maxim pura."

L'UNESAMA: "Ma me esis la maro!" La DUESMA: "E me l'atmosfero!"

"To esas vera; ma ica esas la kordio..", dicis e taceskis (became silent) Alba.

Ed elu desaparís en l'azuro (azure), kunportante la TRIESMA, la humila guto.

## **Lektajo 12 - Lingui Internaciona/Interkomprenigilo (Means of Communication)**

La lingui di preske omna nazioni de India til Atlantiko decendas de komuna origin-linguo. Ica linguo diferenciasis, e la nazioni separis su.

La relati kun stranjera landi esis neimportanta en anciena tempi, pro ke la moyeni (means) dil cirkulado (circulation) esis primitiva.

Tamen sempre existis lingui qui mediatis la trafiko, precipue la komerco. To pruvas ke linguo internaciona esas necesa e nekareebla (indispensable).

La linguo dil Greki dominacis (had predominated) longatempe en l'oriento.

Interne di la frontiéri dil Romana imperio la Latina divenis dominacanta; olu restis la linguo di la cienco (science) en preske (almost) tota Europa til aden la moderna tempo. La Latina ankore uzesas ekleziale mem hodie.



En la 17. e 18. yarcenti, Francia atingis la kulmino (culmination) di sua povo, la Franca divenis la linguo dil dipolomacisti (diplomats) e nobeli.

Nuntempe la linguo dil Angli havas la prerango en la mondo-komerco.

Ma anke la Germana esas ample difuzita: en Austria, Hungaria, Polonia, Rusia, ed en l'esto di Europa, olu ofte esas l'interkomprenigilo por multa mikra nazioni. - Das kleinste Haar wirft seinen Schatten. (The smallest hair casts its shadow.)

Futurale la konkurenco dil naturala lingui en la mondo-trafiko cesos.

Nula de li esas sat (sufficiently) facila, exakta e bela ke olu povus divenar (become) internaciona helpolinguo. Lo rekomendas Ido kom la solvuron.

En Berlin, London e New York, en Arjentinia e Japonia, omnaloke (everywhere), adube komercisti e ciencisti voyajos, Ido komprenesos e parolesos. Ulte to omna naciono kultivos e konservos la pureso e beleso di sua matrolinguo.

En irga fora futuro existos "nova linguo por omni", unesme (for the first time) kom komercala linguo, pose generale kom linguo dil mentala komunikado, tam certe kam ultempe existos aernavigado. (written ~1925 in Germany)

### **Lektajo 13 - Vestaro - *portar* (wear) e *transportar* (carry)**

Me volas vizitar cavespere la teatro; pro to me mustas quik chanjar mea vesti.

Ube esas la kamizo (shirt) e la kalzi (stockings)?

La kamizo esas male glatigita (ironed); mem butono mankas (is missing).

Yen agulo (needle) e filo (thread), sutez (sew) nova butono an la kamizo!

Ka la boti (boots) esas cirajizita (polished)? Ka la vesti (clothes) esas brositita (brushed)? Donez a me la pantalono (trousers), la

vestono (jacket) e la flava jileto (waistcoat)!

La kolumo (collar) esas sordida, me metos (put on, not wear) un neta.

La bruna kravato (necktie) ne plezas a me, me preferas la verda.

Nun me ornas me per l'arjenta kateno (chain) dil horlojeto (watch).

Posh-tukon (= naz-tuko - handkerchief) e gantin (gloves) me ne darfas obliviar.

Mea klefi (keys) e la burso (purse, wallet) esas en la posho (pocket).

La felta chapelo (felt hat) e la mantelo (mantle) pendas an la vestoportilo (hanger). La fuluro (fold ← fular+ur) dil mantelo esas lacerita (torn).

*Transportez* (carry, not wear) olu morge al talioro (tailor) por ke ilu reparez ol.

Se mea salario esus plu granda, me komprus peliso (pelisse) e shapko (fur cap), nam la vetero koldeskas. La furisto (furrier) demandas tro chera preco.

La siorini ofte iras aden la teatro, vestizita per veluro (velvet) e silko, o li *portas* (wears) precoza denteli (lace-works). Tala luxon (luxury) me ne amas.

Nivas, metez la kauchuka (caoutchouc) surshui (overshoes) e la getri (gaiters)!

Yen la parapluvo (umbrella). Granda plezuro!

## **Proverbi (ek: Proverbaro da Peus).**

**Ne omno oresas quo brilas.** - All is not gold that glitters.

**Omnu havas sua propra gusto.** - Every man to his taste.

**L'unesma ateston esas la vesto.** - Fine clothes make the man.

**Defekton di naturo ne kovras veluro (velvet).** - You can't make a silk purse out of a sow's ear.

**Extere ornita (embellished), interna sordida (dirty/sordid).** - A wolf in sheep's clothing.

**La maxim mikra haro (hair) jetas sua ombro.** - Even a worm will turn.

## Lektajo 14 - En la Teatro

(**staco-placo** = **galerio** [ga-LE-ryo] - gallery )

La reprezento komencas precize ye 6:30 kloki (sis kloki e duimo).

La demando pri l'eni-ro-bilieti esas tre granda. Se on volas obtenar bilieto an la gicheto (wicket/ticket window), on mustas ibe instalar su (queue up for) ye ja duima horo (30 minutes) ante olua aperto.

"Me demandas bilieto por la duesma rango, sinistra latero, staco-placo."

"Me regretas, ica plasi esas parvendita, nur partero (pit/parquet circle)- lojio (box/logge) esas ankore recevebla.", "Quante kustas la bilieto?"

"9.50 mark inkluzinte la taxo po l'uzo di la vesteyo (dressing room)."

On pleas la kanto-maestri de Nuernberg da Richard Wagner.

Me preferas opero kam dramato e komedio kam tragedio.

La kurteno levesas. La ceneyo vidigas l'internajo di kirko.

Kantistino kantas per sonora voco. Anke la tenoro kantas ecelante.

L'orkestro-chefo direktas tre vivace (spiritedly).

Omna muzikisti di ca orkestro esas artisti. Pos singla akto eventas pauzo.

Aparte la 3. akto esas belega. On vidas la gaya Johannis-festo sur la prato.

Walter ganas per sua premio-kanto la filiino dil or-forjisto (goldsmith).

La kurteno (curtain) abasesas (is lowered). La audantaro (audience) aplaudas (applauds, claps) entuziasmigite (enthusiastically), la kantisti dankas joyoze. Wagner ne nur esis genio (genius) kom kompozisto ma anke bona poeto.

### ***En 1825 Goethe dicis ad Eckermann:***

"Ta, qua esas ne tote blazita (jaded/blase') e suficante yuna, ne facile trovas loko, ube lu povas esar tam bone sorgata kam en la teatro.

On postulas de vi tote nulo; vi ne bezonas apertar la boko, se vi ne volas.

Kontree vi sidas tote komfortoze (comfortably) quale rejo ed IGAS "(a) vi" komode (conveniently/suitably) REPRESENTAR omno (behave like a king), e REGALAR (treat) via spirito e sensi, quale vi nur povas dezirar to.

Yen poezio, pikt-arto, kant-arto e muziko, arto dramatala e mem plu multo.

Se omna ica arti e charmi di yuneso e beleso agas kune dum un vespero, sur alta nivelo dil arto, lore to esas festo nekomparebla ad irga altra."

### **Lektajo 15 - La Muso e la Leono (da Aesopos)**

Leono dormis en sua kaverno (cave); cirkum lu trupo de gaya musi ludis.

Un/Una de li jus esis kliminta adsur salianta (protruding) rokaji, falis adinfre e vekigis la leono qua retenis (kept) lu per sua grandega pedo.

"Ho ve", la muso pregis, "esez jeneroza a me kompatinda, neimportanta kreuro! me ne volis ofensar tu, me nur facis mispazo e falis de la rokajo.

Quale mea morto utilesus a tu? Lasez vivar me /Lasez (a) me vivar/, e me volas esor/esur gratitudoza a tu dum mea tota vivo!, se me vivus."

"Forirez!", la leono dicis jeneroze e lasis forkurar la museto. Ma pose lu ridis e dicis: "Esor gratitudoza! Nu, ton me dezirus vidar, quale museto povus manifestar sua gratitudo a leono. To ne semblas esor posibla"

Pos kurta tempo la sama muso kuris tra la foresto e serchis nuci (nuts) por su. Subite (suddenly) lu audis la plendala mujado (roaring) di leono.

"Lu certe esas en danjero!" la muso parolis en su ed iris a la loko, de qua la mujado sonis. Ibe lu trovis la jeneroza (generous) leono cirkumplektita (intertwined) da forta reto (net) quan la chasisto pozabis ingenioze por kaptar (capture) per to animali granda e forta.

La kordi (pieces of rope) tante kontraktesabis (shrank together) ke la leono povis uzar nek sua denti nek la forteso di sua pedi por lacerar (tear) li.

"Vartez, amiko," dicis la museto, "cakaze me povas helpar probable maxim bone." Lu adkuris, parrodis (gnawed completely) la kordi qui entravis (fettered) lua avana pedi, e fine divenis ke li (la pedi) esas libera. La leono laceris la cetera (remaining) reto e riatingis tale sua libereso per la helpo da la museto di qua vivon olim lu ipsa sparis sualatre.

Nobla esez la homo, helpema e bona, nam to distingas lu de omna enti quin ni konocas. (Johann Wolfgang von Goethe 1749-1832)

## Lektajo 16 - Du Komercala Letri

Milano, 16. marto 1921.

Sioro Zahn e kompanio, mashin-fabrikerio Mannheim (Germania)

Me dankas pro la sendo dil preco-listo.

Nuntempe agrokultivala (agricultural) mashini demandesas tante multe ke me mustas balde riplenigar (refill) mea magazino (warehouse).

Nia kompristo (buyer) vizitos vu pos kelka dii; ilu havas la promiso (= expekto - expectation) komendar (order) pasable (fairly) granda nombro de mashini, se vu grantos konvenanta rabato (discount) ed avantajoza pago-kondicioni.

Specale me bezonas motor-plugili (ploughs), semo-mashini (sowing-machines), falcho-mashini (mowing-machines), fen (hay)-rastili (rake) (haymaker) e drash-mashini (flail/threshing-machines).

Konsiderante la plucherigo (soaring) extraordinara pro la transporto-preco ed importaco-taxo, me nur povas komprar, se la

preco kalkulesos ad/kom/ye la maxim basa [preco kam] posible.

Me ja recevis avatajoza ofri da Angla firmi; tamen me havas l'espero agreabla, filigar (spin/ make into threads) per ica kompro la relati aferala qui existis ante la milito inter nia firmi, por la profito di la du parti.

Kun granda estimo, Giovanni Rienzi, Dante-strado 17, Milano (Italia)

Mainz, 8. februaro 1921.

Sioro P. Thorbecke, Rembrandt-placo 11, Amsterdam (Nederlando).

Vua sendajo del 29. januaro arivis cadie.

La vari esas nereprochebla, pezo e nombro esis justa.

Me komisis (appointed) la Rhenana banko asignar a vu la sumo de 2864 florini.

Me pregas vu quik sendar a me la sequanta vari:

500 kilogrami de rizo, singla kg po 4 mark;

100 kg de kakao, maxim bona qualeso;

200 kg de saguto (sago); 220 kg de Braziliana kafeo;

90 kg de teo, mezvalora mixuro (mixture);

4000 buxi de lakto sukrizita (sugared); 360 kg de fromajo (cheese) de Edam;

50 litri de palm-oleo (palm oil); fine 5 kg de pipro (pepper) muelita.

Koncerne la preci me fidas a vu pro mea multyara experienco pri la loyaleso di vua firmo, e me supozas, ke la livrajo esos tam bona kam la lasta.

Kun respektoza saluti, vua devota (devoted), Walter Schutz

### ***La pasero e la kolombo***

Puerulo kaptabis pasero (sparrow) e vidis pose kolombo (dove) sur la tekto.

"Ita esas plu bona", ilu pensis, lasis riflugar la pasero ed acensis la tekto, por kaptar vice (= instead of) lu la kolombo.

Ma ica ne vartis il, ma lu forflugis.

Sidante sur la tekto, sen pasero e sen kolombo, la puerulo memoris la proverbo: Plu bona (esas) pasero en la manuo kam kolombo sur la tekto.

### **Lektajo 17 - Linguala Stilo**

La skopo di la linguo internaciona esas l'interkompreno adminime en Europa. Ne suficas havar internaciona vortaro e gramatiko inter lingui Europala, se la frazi ne esas omnaloke komprenebla (por diferanta nacionani). La vortordino esez naturala segun la reguli dil Ido-gramatiko. La maxim bona moyeno por komprenesar esas facar kurta frazi. Qua bone skribas, facas multa punti. Ne akumuliez la subordinita frazi.

Anke en Ido existas bona e mala stilo. La naturala lingui havas multa idiomaji, quin on devas uzar, mem se li esas nelogikala. "Ido ne havas idiomaji"\*, singla nociono havas un vorto e singla vorto signifikas nur un nociono.

Do on evitez l'idiomaji dil naturala lingui; li ne komprenesas en omna landi. Skribez simple e klare, lore tu espereble skribos en bona stilo.

\*Ma poke fanfaronanta reklamajo por Ido da olima Idisto Germana, nam omna lingui sur la tero havas plu o min idiomaji e ne-logikeso, quin tamen Ido adminime esforcas eskapar per sua anno por facileso.

### **Lektajo 18 - Pri Idiomaji (idioms) e Propra Kustumo di Naturala Lingui**

Lernar stranjera lingui esas multe desfacila por ordinara populi (= plebeyi).

Nam sempre restas/os nekontebla multa neregulozeso (irregularities) gramatikala ed anke en dicmanieri, idiomaji nacionala, pos "omna esforcado (endeavour)" bone lernar la linguo di irga intereso ed importo. Logikeso ne suficas ma la rezulton decidos nur suficanta tempo e pekunio por parlernar la linguo.

Quale onu povus facile memorar omna idiomaji di linguo lernata? Exemple: rain cats and dogs, fight like Kilkenny cats, let the cat out of the bag...

Quale onu povus facile dicernar per dicionario la korekta signifiko di frazo? Kande USAani dicas "I'm MAD about the event.", onu ne povas komprenar la vera signifiko per simple konsultar la dicionario; mad - fola Advere la frazo ne signifikas ke "Me esas FOLA pri l'evento" ma to dicas ke "Me IRACAS pri l'evento." ed altrafoye "Me ENTUZIASMAS pri l'evento."

... HoLala!

Tala kozi numeroza abundas e nule cesas kande onu lernas irga stranjera linguo. Advere nur la richi povas facile lernar sua stranjera linguo, se li deziras.

La plebeyi nur povus disponar sua bona logikeso, sen havar suficanta pekunio. Ido esas/os la unika internaciona linguo por omna laboristi sur la mondo, pro ke onu povas facile lernar Ido inter sua limitizita tempo e pekunio. Do ni lernez Ido, Ido mustos kultivar nia mento per sua logikeso por omni.

.....skribita da laboristo, Idisto ed Idiotisto, Bebson Y. Hochfeld



***Advanced Lessons (21 - 30) - English  
Idioms and Ido***

## ***Lesson 21 - Duadek-e-unesma Leciono***

### **Possession with *di*, Again**

The English possessive case has to be turned round and translated by the preposition **di**:

The father's dog - **La hundo di la patro**

The mother's meeting - **La asemblo di la matro**

A mother's meeting - **Asemblo di matro**

A beggar's revenge - **Venjo di mendikisto**

With prepositions *to* and *at*, the possessive case is translated by preposition **che**:

She lives at her uncle's house - **Elu lojas che sua onklulo.**

He went to his tailor's (shop). - **Ilu iris che sua talioro.**

The possessive case was formerly used with all nouns. We still find traces of it in expressions like, *an hour's walk*, where there is no real possession, and preposition **de** is to be used.

an hour's walk - **un horo de marcho**, or, **marcho de/dum un horo**

A few expressions where the possessive case is found can be rendered by simpler forms:

at arm's length - **ye brakio-disto**

for mercy's sake - **pro kompato**

a hair's breadth - **har-dikeso**

today's news - **la ca-diala informo**

for form's sake - **por la formo**

Another form of possessive is the adjectival noun:

a railway carriage - **fervoyala vagono**, or, **vagono di fervoyo**

the park gate - **la parkala pordego**, or, **la pordego di la parko**

## Possession with the help of *that*

A phrase indicating possession at the end of a sentence often has to be translated with the help of the pronoun *that*:

He said his writing was better than his brother's (that of his brother). - **Il u dicis ke lua skribajo esas plu bona kam ta di lua frutulo.**

She liked her sister's best (that of her sister). - **Elu maxim prizas ta di sua fratino.**

It is as good as my grandfather's (as that of my grandfather). - **Olu esas tam bona kam ta di mea avulo.**

It is the old man's (that of the old man). - **Olu esas ta di la oldulo.**

(active verb): It belongs to the old man. - **Olu apartenas a la oldulo.**

## Partitive Articles

When the indefinite adjectives *some*, *any* are used with words of quantity in place of *a*, *an*, they are not to be translated.

The children have some bread. - **La infanti havas pano.**

Did he get any money? - **Kad ilu recevis pekunio?**

He wrote without any ink. - **Il u skribis sen inko.**

In such cases the word *some* or *any* could easily be left out.

Did he get money? etc. - **Kad ilu recevis pekunio?**

If the word *some* or *any* cannot be left out, then it is an adjective or a pronoun, and must be translated:

Whether he got any or not, I don't know. - **Kad ilu recevis kelka o ne, me ne savas.**

## Apparent Plurals

Note the following and all similar:

bellows - **sufilo**

breeches - **pantalono**

scissors - **cizo**

tongs - **tenalio**

billiards - **biliardo**

contents - **kontenajo**

dregs - **lizo**

alms - **almono od almoni**

means - **moyeno o moyeni**

news - **novumo o novumi**

Some nouns of quantity remain singular in English when preceded by a numeral:

They had three brace of partridges and six dozen oysters. - **Li havis tri pari [de] perdriki e sis dekedui [de] ostri.**

## How to translate adverbials

The BOOK on the desk is mine.

- *on the desk* is an *adjectival* phrase, when it describes "BOOK".

An ant FOUND the book on the desk.

- *on the desk* is an *adverbial* phrase, when it describes "FOUND".

## Noun Phrases as an Adverbs

We work *eight hours every day*.

**Ni laboras dum ok hori omna-die / (ye) omna dio.**

They walked *ten miles*.

**Li marchis larje de dek milii [MI-lyi].**

They always traveled *second class*.

**Li sempre voyajis per la duesma klaso.**

They decided go *their separate ways*.

**Li decidis irar sur sua separita voyi.**

## Adverbs as Quasi-nouns

*Now* is the time to rise up for peace.

**Nun (La prezento) esas la tempo por staceskar por paco.**

How far is it from *here* to the police station?

**Quanta esas la disto de hike (ca loko) a la polic-staciono?**

## Adverbs as Adjectives

The long, cold winter is *over*.

**La longa, kolda vintro esas par-finita.**

## Adverbs as Conjunctions

*Once* you hesitate, you are lost.

**Se un-foye tu hezitus, tu quik egaresus.**

She got up *directly* (as soon as) the alarm clock rang.

**Elu levis su quik kande la alarm-klosho sonis.**

**Elu levis su tam balde kam la alarm-klosho sonis.**

## How to Translate *it*

It is me who first introduced the two.

**Esas me, ta qua unesme introduktis la du. =**

**Ta qua unesme introduktis la du, esas me.**

Some Idists write it as...(Kelka Idisti skribas quale ...)

**Esas me qua unesme introduktis la du.**

But this sentence is equivalent to ...

**Me, qua unesme introduktis la du, esas. =**

**Me, qua unesme introduktis la du, existas. =**

**Existas me, qua unesme introduktis la du.**

When **esas** means *exists* ...

There exists a witness who saw the crime. - **Esas l'atestanto qua vidis la krimino. →**

There existed (in the park) the witness who saw the crime. - **Esis (en la parko) l'atestanto qua vidis la krimino. =**

There was found (in the park) the witness who saw the crime. - **Trovesis (en la parko) l'atestanto qua vidis la krimino. =**

In the park existed the witness who saw the crime. - **(En la parko) esis l'atestanto qua vidis la krimino. =**

The witness who saw the crime was in the park. - **L'atestanto qua vidis la krimino esis (en la parko). =**

When **esas** means .. It *is* a who, which, or that does/did so and so, use **ta qua**:

**Ta qua vidis la krimino (en la parko) esis l'atestanto. =**

**(En la parko) esis l'atestanto, ta qua vidis la krimino. =**

**Esas l'atestanto, ta qua vidis la krimino (en la parko). →**

**Esas l'atestanto, ta qua vidis la krimino.**

## Lesson 22 - Duadek-e-duesma Leciono

### How to Translate *that*

If *that* joins two sentences, use **ke**:

I see that you are here. - **Me vidas ke vu esas hike.**

If *that* means *who*, *whom*, *which*, use **qua** as subject, **quan** as object (if before the verb):

The cat that was here. - **La kato qua esis hike.**

The dog that you saw. - **La hundo quan vu vidis.**

If it means *that* person, use **ita**, **ta**:

That man is too old. - **Ita/ta viro esas tro olda.**

If it means *that* thing, use **ito**, **to**:

That is no use. - **Ito/to ne utilesas.**

If it means *that* kind of, use **tala**:

That person! Well, I never! - **Tala persono! Ne-kredebla!**

If it means *in order that*, use **por ke** (with imperative):

I tell you now that you will be prepared. - **Me dicas olu a vu nun por ke vu esez preparita/pronta.**

### *that* Should Never Be Omitted

*That* is very often omitted in English, but should never be omitted in Ido:

The book (that) I gave you - **La libro quan me donis a vu.**

I think (that) he will come. - **Me opinionas ke ilu venos.**

*That* is generally omitted in English after verbs like *to think*, *to hope*, *to wish*, *to believe*. It is critically important to pay attention to this rule, as the correct use of the word **ke** is the key to a good international style for English-speaking students.

## Other Words Omitted

All other words omitted in English have to be inserted in Ido:

It was he mentioned the fact (= he who mentioned). - **Esas ilu, ta qua mencionis la fakto.**

He knew the man we were speaking of (= of whom we...). - **Ilu konocis la viro pri qua ni parolis.**

Do what he will (= let him do...), he cannot... - **Ilu facez quon ilu volas, ilu ne povas...**

If a man was great while living (= while he was living),... - **Se homo esis famoza dum ke ilu vivis,...**

## to or for omitted in English

The object of *to* or *for* in English is the *indirect object*, even if it is omitted. *To* and *for* cannot be omitted in Ido.

He gave the boy a penny (= a penny to the boy). - **Ilu donis ok centimi a la puero.**

Show me it (= show it to me). - **Montrez olu a me.**

## Possession for *whose*, *of which*

*Whose* and *of which* are translated **di qua/qui**:

The boy *whose* book I saw (= the boy of whom I saw the book).

**La puero di qua me vidis la libro.**

The sword which Hector gave Ajax was that on *whose* point Ajax fell.

**La glavo quan Hektor donis ad Ajax, esis ta sur la pinto di qua Ajax falis.**

The books, the binding *of which* you like.

**La libri di qui vu prizis la binduro.**



## Infinitive Clauses

The infinitive clause is another important case in which *that* (**ke**) as a conjunction should be used. It is possible to translate such clauses like this:

I want you to come. - **Me volas vu venar.**

He ordered them to go away. - **Il u imperis li de-irar.**

But it is preferable to translate infinitive clauses by using **ke** like this:

I want you to come. - **Me volas ke vu venez.**

He ordered them to go away. - **Il u imperis ke li de-irez.**

Such phrases occur most frequently with verbs of command and desire.

## Imperative Clauses

The subject of an imperative clause can be omitted only when it is **vu** or **tu**.

Come here as soon as (it is) possible.

**Tu venez ad-hike tam balde kam (lo esez) posibla. →**

**Venez ad-hike tam balde kam posibla.**

If the command is directed to someone (or something) other than *you*, the subject cannot be omitted:

Spring come to Europe as soon as possible! (Said in winter...) -

**Printempo venez ad-en Europa tam balde kam posibla!**

**(Dicita en vintro.)**

Prayer go to hell so that the sinner has a chance to repent. -

**Prego venez ad-en l'inferno por ke la pekinto povez  
repentar.**

**pregar:** to beg, entreat, beseech, and also to pray to God

## Comparison, Again

She is beautiful. - **Elu esas bela.**

She is as beautiful as her sister. - **Elu esas tam bela kam sua fratino.**

She is more beautiful than her sister. - **Elu esas plu bela kam sua fratino.**

She is less beautiful than her sister. - **Elu esas min bela kam sua fratino.**

She is no less beautiful than her sister. She is as beautiful as her sister. - **Elu ne esas min bela kam sua fratino.**

She is no more beautiful than her sister. Both of them are ugly. - **Elu ne esas plu bela kam sua fratino. L'amba esas leda.**

No one is more beautiful than her sister. - **Nulu esas plu bela kam elua fratino.**

No one is as beautiful as her sister. - **Nulu esas tam bela kam elua fratino.**

Her sister is the most beautiful woman of all. - **Elua fratino esas la maxim bela muliero del omni.**

She has no less than (= as much as) 50 dollars. - **Elu havas ne min kam kinadek dolari. = Elu havas tam multa kam kinadek dolari.**

She has not less than (= at least) 50 dollars. = **Elu ne havas min kam kinadek dolari. = Elu havas ad-minime kinadek dolari.**

She has no more than (= only, just, exactly) 50 dollars. = **Elu havas ne plu kam kinadek dolari. = Elu havas nur/precize kindadek dolari.**

She has not more than (= at most) 50 dollars. = **Elu ne havas plu kam kinadek dolari. = Elu havas ad-maxime kinadek dolari.**

## How to Get *Dad* and *Mom* from *Father* and *Mother*

For a more familiar form of *mother* and *father*, use the suffixes -**ch-** and -**ny-**:

Father : **Patro** → Dad : **Pacho**

Mother : **Matro** → Mom : **Manyo**

In English we make Anthony into Tony, and Katharine into Kate or Kitty. In Ido we can get similar names by putting -**ch-** for a male, or -**ny-** for a female, after one of the first few letters of the full name. Thus, from Michael we form **Micho**; and from Katherine we make **Katanyo** or **Kanyo**.

## Why You Need *di* Between Noun and Infinitive

Phrases like *power of comprehension* (or *lack of understanding*) are understood in Ido in the form *power to comprehend* (or *inability to understand*), using an infinitive after a noun.

Without the *of* between the noun and infinitive, you would say:

One must by one's own power of comprehension deal with the matter.

= One must by one's own power to comprehend to deal with the matter. (This is awkward English, but suits the purpose here.)

**Lu mustas per sua esforco komprenar traktar l'afero.**

(In Ido, **lu** means *he*, *she*, or *it*, typically replaced with *one* in English. The Ido indefinite pronoun **on** for the English *one* could work here, but **on** has more of a broader societal or indefinite group sense of *they*, *we*, *people*, etc. than we would like for these examples.)

One must, by one's own power, to comprehend to deal with the matter.

**Lu mustas, per sua esforco, komprenar traktar l'afero.**

One must, by one's own power to comprehend, to deal with the matter.

**Lu mustas, per sua esforco komprenar, traktar l'afero.**

Inserting **di** between the noun and its following infinitive clarifies the intended meaning:

One must by one's own power of comprehension, deal with the matter. - **Lu mustas, per sua esforco di komprenar, traktar l'afero.**

One must, by one's own power of comprehension, deal with the matter. - **Lu mustas, per sua esforco, komprenar (quale) traktar l'afero.**

## Lesson 23 - Duadek-e-triesma Leciono

### How to Translate *what*

If *what* means *that which*, use **to quo** or **to quon**, according to sense:

What is here is good. (= That *which* is here is good.)

**To quo esas hike, esas bona.**

(In this sentence *which* is the subject of *is*.)

What you say is right. (= That *which* you say is right.)

**To quon vu dicas, esas justa.**

(Here *which* is the object of *you say*.)

Note. - In the correlation **to quo**, or **to quon**, the **to** can be omitted after a verb.

I heard what he said. - **Me audis quon ilu dicis.**

I know what they are. - **Me savas quo li esas.**

If *what* is a question and means *what thing*, use **quo** or **quon**:

What is it? - **Quo esas?**

What is the matter? - **Quo eventas?**

What do you want? (= you want what thing?, *what* being the object.) - **Quon vu volas?**

As an adjective, use **qua**, **quan**:

What carriage? - **Qua veturo?**

What day? - **Qua dio?**

As an exclamation, use **quo!**:

What! Is it true? - **Quo!, ka vera?**

For *what* followed by *a* (*what a...*), translate *what* by **quala**:

What a wind! - **Quala vento!**

## Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns, Again

*some, any*: see previous lessons.

*no*, before a noun of quantity = not before the verb:

I have no bread (= I not have bread.) - **Me ne havas pano.**

*no*, before a noun of individuality = not one: **nula**

No man will say. - **Nula homo dicos.**

*either* (= the one or the other):

Either of them will do (= one or other will suit).

**Una od altra konvenos.**

Either book will do (= one book or the other will suit).

**Un libro o la altra konvenos.**

(*Either ... or* is a conjunction, translated by **sive ... sive**)

*neither* (= *nor one nor the other*):

Neither (one nor the other) door was open. - **Nek una nek la altra pordo esis apertita.**

*few* = **poka**

*a few* = **kelka**

*several* = **plura**

*many, much* = **multa** (*too many, much* = **tro multa**).

*such*, meaning *quality* = **tala**, meaning *those* = **ti**.

Such as we are (= such a quality we have) - **Tala quala ni esas.**

Such as like it (= those who like it) - **Ti qui prizas olu.**

*all*, meaning everything = **omno**.

meaning everybody = **omni**.

as an adjective = **omna**.

All I have said. - **Omno quon me dicis.**

All were there (= all were present). - **Omni asistis.**

All trouble, all efforts. - **Omna peno, omna esforci.**  
*all the*, meaning the whole = **la tota**.

All the town was ablaze. - **La tota urbo flagris.**  
*each other* = **una altra**.  
*one another* = **una altra** (or verb commencing by **inter-**).

They loved each other. - **Li amis una altra.**

They loved one another. - **Li amis una altra. Li inter-amis.**

They took each other's hats. - **Li prenis la una la chapelo di la altra.**

*not anything, nothing* = **ne ... ulo, nulo**

*no one, none* = **ne ... ulu, nulu**

*one*

*One* is translated by **un** as a numeral, **una** as an adjective showing unity, **unu** as a pronoun of person:

One and one make two. - **Un ed un facas du.**

The One Holy Church. - **La Una Santa Eklezio.**

The one said this, the other said that. - **Unu dicis ico, la altru dicis ito.**

*One* after demonstrative (this one, that one, the other one), and after adjectives (a young one, a good one) is omitted:

This one said this, that one said that, and the other one said the other thing. - **Ica dicis ico, ita dicis ito, e la altra dicis la altro.**

The little one was tired. - **La puereto esis fatigita.**

*One* after an adjective, is often translated by a repetition of the noun.

She had a doll, a beautiful one too. - **Elu havis pupeo, vere bela pupeo.**

*the ones*, as a pronoun = **uni**:

The ones were long, the other were short. - **Uni esis longa, l'altri esis kurta.**

*ones*, after an adjective, is not translated:

Give me two small ones. - **Donez ad me du mikra.**

*self*, the pronoun *self* is translated by **ipsa**:

Who was there? Only myself. - **Qua esis ibe? Nur me ipsa.**

When *myself*, *himself*, etc., are used after the simple pronoun (*I myself*, *she herself*, etc.), or after a noun (*the king himself*), translate the simple pronoun or noun, and add *ipsa* as separate word:

They themselves told me. - **Li ipsa dicis to a me.**

She saw it herself. - **Elu ipsa vidis olu.**

She saw the thing itself. - **Elu vidis la kozo ipsa.**

The word **ipsa** should be placed next to the word it refers to.

*Self* as a noun is translated by **persono**:

My whole self. - **mea tota persono.**

## Using *quale* and *kom*

**A quale B** - A and B are similar but not the same character.

**Quale** means - (in comparison) as, like: as in the manner of

**Matro quale mortinta patro reprimandis sua pueri ma ne suficante bone.**

**A kom B** - A and B are the same character with different qualities

**Kom** means - as in the capacity, character, role, quality of; being in the capacity, character, role, quality of; to be in the capacity, character, role, quality of.

**Patro anke kom matro sorgis sua pueri, nam ja mortabis la matro.**



## Lesson 24 - Duadek-e-quaresma Leciono

### How to Translate *shall*

If *shall* is a simple future, use **-os**:

I shall be here tomorrow. - **Me esos hike morge.**

If *shall* means *duty*, use **devar** or the imperative:

He shall do it. - **Ilu devas facar lo.**

Thou shalt not bear false witness. - **Tu ne false atestez.**

### How to Translate *will*

If *will* is a simple future, use **-os**:

He will write to you. - **Il skribos a vu.**

If *will* means *emphasis*, use **ya** with future:

I will do it. - **Me ya facos lo.**

If *will* means *to be willing, to be so good*, use **voluntar**:

Will you do me a favour? - **Ka vu voluntas facar favoro a me?**

As a description of a frequent or repeated act or event, *will* is not translated (except by a paraphrase or by **-ad-**):

Sometimes he will look in of an evening. - **Kelka-foye ilu venas vizitar ni en la vespero. = Eventas kelka-foye ke ilu venas vizitar ni. = Ilu vizitadas ni vespere.**

### How to Translate *should*

If *should* is a simple conditional, use **-us**:

I should be glad to have it. - **Me esus felica havar ol, or, Se me havus ol.**

If *should* means *ought*, use **devas**:

You should write to them. - **Vu devas skribar a li.**

For a conditional sense, use **devus**, not **devas**. Compare:

You ought (**devas**) to do it if you can. – possible

You ought (**devus**) to do it if you could. – not probable

At beginning of the sentence, use **se** (*if*) with the future tense:

Should you require my services. - **Se vu bezonos mea servi.**

## How to Translate *would*

If *would* is a simple conditional, use **-us**:

He would not forget it. - **Ilu ne oblivius ol.**

If *would* means *insistence*, use **volis** (= did want):

I tried to stop him, but he would do it. - **Me probis haltigar il, ma ilu volis facar ol.**

If *would* means *habit*, use **-ad-**:

She would sit on that little chair. - **Elu sidadis sur ta stuleto.**

In the phrase *would that*, use either **Se nur** (*if only*) with conditional or **Deo volez ke** (*God wills that...*) with imperative:

Would that we were younger again! - **Se nur ni esus itere yuna!**

Would that peace reigned everywhere! - **Deo volez ke paco omna-loke regnez!**

## How to Translate *may*

If *may* means *perhaps*, use **forsan**:

It may rain. - **Forsan pluvos.**

It may be so. - **Forsan esas tale.**

If *may* means *permission*, use **darfar** or a paraphrase:

May I come in? - **Ka me darfes en-venar?**

You may not do it (= you are not allowed to do it.) - **Vu ne darfes facar ol.**

You may not do it (= perhaps you won't do it.) - **Forsan vu ne facos ol.**

## How to Translate *must*

With a personal subject, use the personal verb **mustar**:

I must go. - **Me mustas departar.**

When the subject cannot, or need not, be expressed use the impersonal verb **oportar**:

We must go now. - **Oportas departar nun.**

Sometimes an adjective in **-end-** suffices:

A book that must be read. - **Libro lektenda.**

## How to Translate *can afford*

I can't afford (cannot find) the (free) time. - **Me ne povas trovar la tempo libera.**

I can't afford it. -

My means do not permit. - **Mea moyeni ne permisas.**

I am not able to sustain or support the expense of it. - **Me ne povas sustenar o suportar la spensi di.**

I am not rich enough. - **Me ne esas sat richa.**

## Habitual Actions

The word *used to*, when it really means *a habit*, is translated by affix **-ad-**:

We used to walk up and down for hours. - **Ni iradis e venadis dum hori.**

Compare with:

We (are now) walk up and down for hours. - **Ni iras e venas dum hori.**

We (one time) walked up and down for hours. - **Ni iris e venis dum hori.**

## Changes of Tense

In Ido tenses do not govern each other:

I thought it was raining. - **Me pensis ke pluvas.**

(= I thought that it is raining. "It is raining", I thought.)

He found she was tired. - **Illo trovis ke elu esas fatigita.**

(= He found that she is tired - she was tired at the time he found it.)

The English present perfect with *date* is translated by present tense and the word *since*.

I have known it these four days. - **Me savas lo de quar dii.**

(= I know it from four days.)

I have been here two months. - **Me esas hike de du monati.**

I had been in Rome a week when I received your letter. - **Me esis en Roma de un semano, kande me recevis vua letro.**

(= I was in Rome from a week ...)

The English simple past tense with *for* becomes a past tense with **dum** in Ido:

I was there for two months (= during two months). - **Me esis ibe dum du monati.**

She used it for one year. - **Elu uzis oll dum un yaro.**

## **Small Talk Questions and Phrases**

The following examples will explain better than any rule how to translate conversational phrases that fall into the category of *small talk*:

Are you tired? - **Ka vu esas fatigita?**

I am not tired. - **Me ne esas fatigita.**

You are tired, aren't you? - **Vu esas fatigita, ka ne?**

You aren't tired, are you? - **Vu ne esas fatigita, ka yes?**

I am not tired; are you? - **Me ne esas fatigita; ka vu (esas)?**

I am tired; aren't you? - **Me esas fatigita; ka vu ne (esas)?**

He is tired, isn't he? - **Ilu esas fatigita, ka ne?**

He isn't tired, is he? - **Ilu ne esas fatigita, ka yes?**

I have finished; have you? - **Me ja finis; ka vu (anke)?**

I have! - **Me anke!**

Has he? - **Kad ilu (anke)?**

He hasn't. - **Ilu ne.**

You'll come, won't you? - **Vu venos, ka ne?**

She won't come; will you? - **Elu ne volas venar; ka vu volas?**

I don't know, I am sure. - **Me tote ne savas.**

Oh! do! please! - **Ho, yes! (venez) me pregas!**

Note: Some Idists use **ka no?** for **ka ne?** and **kad yes?** for **ka yes?**

**Bluto, Tu esas ne-polita, ka no?**

**No, me ne esas ne-polita, Popeye.**

or

**Bluto, Tu esas ne-polita, ka ne?**

**No, me ne esas ne-polita, Popeye.**

**Olive, Tu ne esas ne-polita, kad yes?**

**Ma yes, me deziras esar ne-polita precipue por tu, Bluto.**

or

**Olive, Tu ne esas ne-polita, ka yes?**

**Ma yes, me deziras esar ne-polita precipue por tu, Bluto.**

## How to Translate *it*

It was in 1989 that the Berlin Wall was taken down. - **Esis en 1989 (l'evento) ke la muro Komunismal di Berlin demolisesis.**

It is a virtue never to tell a lie. - **Esas vertuo nultempe mentiar. = Nultempe mentiar esas vertuo.**

There is a virtue of never telling a lie. - **Esas vertuo di nultempe mentiar. - Vertuo di nultempe mentiar existas.**

I found the beautiful dress. - **Me trovis la bela robo.**

I found the dress (to be) beautiful. - **Me trovis la robo esar/ye bela.**

Note here the use of **ke** to signal a dependent (explanatory) clause:

I found the tiger running. - **Me trovis la tigro kuranta? No! Me trovis ke la tigro esas kuranta.**

I found the running tiger. - **Me trovis la kuranta tigro.**

I found the tiger to be running. - **Me trovis la tigro esar/ye kuranta. = Me trovis la tigro kurar. = Me trovis ke la tigro kuras.**

Last night I found you beautiful in that dress. - **Hiere nokte me trovis tu esar/ye bela en ta robo. = Hiere nokte me trovis ke tu esas bela en ta robo.**

## Nouns with *di* and Infinitives, Again

The soldier found the place to die. - **La soldato trovis la loko mortar? No! La loko ne mortas.** (The place is not dying.) **La soldato trovis la loko di mortar.** - The soldier found the place of (for) dying (to die).

## Lesson 25 - Duadek-e-kinesma Leciono

### How to Translate the English *-ing*

English verb forms ending in *-ing* are typically present participles that can be translated in Ido with the verb suffix **-anta**. The following rules cover most cases:

#### Verbal Adjective

Use **-anta** only if the word ending with *-ing* is a true verbal adjective qualifying a noun, and therefore can be replaced by a verb phrase using *who* or *which*:

A crying child, a child who cries. - **Krianta infanto.**

A gratifying result, a result which gratifies. - **Kontentiganta rezulto.**

#### A Noun of Action

In most other cases, *-ing* merely signifies a noun of action:

to beat - a beating, to brush - a brushing, to institute - instituting

Such nouns in Ido have the simple termination **-o**, which, when the root is a verb, precisely means action:

to beat - **batar**, a beating – **bato**

to brush - **brosar**, a brushing – **broso**

to institute - **institucar**, the instituting (of something) - **instituto**

To convey an idea of particular duration of an action, use **-ado** instead of **-o**: to dance - **dansar**, a dance - **danso**, dancing - **dansado**

Young people are fond of dancing. - **La yuni prizas dansado.**

Angling (fishing) is a pleasant pastime. - **Peskado esas agreabla tempo-pasigivo.**

Constant traveling is bad for the nerves. - **La sempra voyajado nocas la nervi.**

In the last two examples, the simple form **pesko** would mean catching a fish once, not catching fish generally, and **voyaĵo** would be a specific or single journey, not traveling in general.

### ***Adverbial Participles***

At the beginning of a sentence or clause, the word ending in *-ing* should be translated by the adverb ending **-ante**, if it could be or is preceded by a preposition or conjunction like *while, in, on*:

Replying to your letter (= in reply to your letter). -

**Respondante a vua letro.**

On coming in, I saw her. - **Enirante, me vidis elu.**

I spoke to him standing (= while standing). - **Stacante, me parolis ad ilu.**

Taking his hat, he went out. - **Prenante lua chapelo, ilu ekiris.**

If the word ending in *-ing* is the auxiliary to *have*, then the past participle ending **-inte** of the second (following) verb must be used:

Having spoken thus, he sat down. - **Tale parolinte, ilu sideskis.**

Having been in the place, I know it. - **Esinte en la loko, me konocas ol**

Or, Because I had been in the place, ... - **Pro ke me esis en la loko, ...**

### ***Infinitives with prepositions***

After a preposition, the word ending in *-ing* is the equivalent of an infinitive, since English prepositions, except *to*, take a participle:

Before going away (= before to-go-away). - **Ante departar.**

After speaking (= after to-have-spoken). - **Pos parolir.**

Instead of writing (= instead of to-write). - **Vice skribar.**

After answering her letter. - **Pos respondir ad elua letro.**

Note. - *While* is a conjunction (*during* being the corresponding



preposition):

While running, they fell down. - **Dum ke li kuris (Dum lia kuro), li falis.**

### **Other Cases**

There are other cases that cannot be classified under any of the above general rules. Here are some examples for reference:

(a) Angry for being disturbed (= angry because one disturbed him) - **Iracante pro ke on trublis ilu.**

(b) Particular ways of doing things (= to do things) - **Specala manieri facar kozi.**

(c) He was far from appreciating her good qualities (= he certainly did not value highly her good qualities). - **Ilu certe ne alte prizis elua bona qualesi.**

(d) He agreed with her in liking sweets (= he agreed with her in that thing, that they both (they two) liked sweets). - **Ilu akordis kun elu en to ke li du prizis sukraji. ...or... Ilu akordis kun elu en prizar sukraji.**

(e) I can't help loving the child (= I cannot not-love the child). - **Me ne povas ne amar la infanto.**

(f) They hindered (kept) him from running. - **Li impedis ke ilu kurez.**

(g) She intended coming yesterday (= she intended to come). - **Elu intencis venar hiero.**

(h) Out of hearing (= not able-to-be-reached by a call). - **Ne-atingebla per voko, or Exter voko (out of call), or Ja ne-vokebla (= already not call-able).**

(i) A boarding-house - **gasteyo**

An eating-house - **restorerio**

A dining-room - **manjo-chambro**

A walking-stick - **promen-batono**

A sitting-room - **saloneto**

A swimming-bath - **nateyo**

A writing-table - **skribo-tablo**

A drawing-pencil - **desegno-krayono**

A camping outfit - **acesori di kamp(ad)o**

If the word ending in *-ing* is the subject of a verb, use either the infinitive or the noun form in Ido:

Smoking is bad for the health. - **Fumar esas mala por la saneso.**

(7) If the word ending in *-ing* is preceded by *to be* (*am, is, was*), use the simple form of the verb:

I am calling you. - **Me vokas vu.**

## How to Translate the English *to*

I didn't know where to get the bus. - **Me ne savis ube acensar l'omnibuso.**

I need something with which to write. - **Me bezonas ulo per qua (onu povez) skribar.**

Hobbies give a person something to love and something in which to find freedom. - **Hobii donas ad onu ulo por amar ed ulo en qua (onu povez) trovar libereso.**

He had the kindness to take me to the hospital. -

**Ilu montris l'amikeso di portar me a la hospitalo.**

**Che ilu existis l'amikeso di portar me a la hospitalo.**

**Che ilu esis l'amikeso di portar me a la hospitalo.**

**Ilu do povis mostrar l'amikeso di facar altra kozi (querar ambulanco).**

(Or, excluding **di** from the above examples)...

**Che ilu esis l'amikeso portar me a la hospitalo.**

**Portar me a la hospitalo esis l'amikeso che ilu.**

**Portar me a la hospitalo esis l'amikeso por ilu.**

**Ilu do ne pensis pri l'amikeso di facar altra kozi.**

You are to apologize to her for it. - **Vu devas exkuzar vu ad elu pro to.**

The ring was not to be found anywhere. - **Onu nul-loke povis trovar la ringo.**

## How to Get the Most out of *-ir, -ar, -or*

(This essay in Ido on a lesson well learned demonstrates the use of the past, present, and future infinitive forms.)

La Japoniana frukto, la kakio\* (Japanese persimmon), esas dolca frukto kande olu esas tre matura. Tamen kande olu esas pre-matura, la kakio\* esas fulminante bitra en la boko.

Ye lasta yaro me hazarde manjis kakio\* pre-matura pro ke me miskomprenis olu ye/esar suficante matura. Me nun regretas ke me manjis kakio\* pre-matura. =

Me regretas manj-ir kakio pre-matura.

Me nun anke hazarde manjas kakio\* pre-matura pro ke mea okuli senileskas. Ho, ve! Me multe regretas ke me manjas kakio\* pre-matura pro accidenteto. =

Me regretas manj-ar kakio pre-matura.

Tamen mea cerebro anke senileskas. Me promisis ad un de mea amiki ke me morge manjos kakio\* pre-matura por pruvar mea kurajo virala kom puniso pro pario. Me ne povas ne regretar pro mea foleso ke me manjos kakio\* pre-matura. =

Me regretas manj-or kakio pre-matura.

## ***Lesson 26 - Duadek-e-sisesma Leciono***

### **List of Prepositions**

**de** - from, since. of (in quantities): unu de li - one of them

**de-pos** - since, after

**di** - of (possession and genitive)

**da** - by (authorship or after passive verb)

**ad, a** - to (direction, thing, intention)

**pensar a** - to turn one's thoughts to, think of

**amo a Deo** - love of God

**irar a ...** - to go to ...

**aden** - into

**adsur** - on to

**en** - in

**ek** - out of (with motion, choice, material)

**vazo ek oro** - a vase of gold

**irar ek la chambro** - to go out of the room

**exter** - outside (without motion)

**sur** - on

**super** - above

**sub** - under (with or without motion)

**infre di** - at the bottom or foot of, below

**inter** - between, among

**tra** - through (in crossing only)

**cis** - this side of

**trans** - the other side of, across (with or without motion)

**preter** - beyond, leaving behind

**lor** - at the time of

**ante** - before (in time)

**pos** - after (in time)

**avan** - in front of, before (in space)

**dop** - behind, after (in space)

**koram** - in the presence of

**che** - at, to (the house of)

**apud** - next to, by, beside

**an** - on, at (contiguity)

**an la tablo** - at (the) table

**an Seine** - on the Seine

**cirkum** - around, about (place, time, quantity, etc.)

**kontre** - against

**pro** - because, on account of

**por** - for, in view of, in order to

**per** - by means of, through

**pri** - concerning, of, about, relating to, on

**kun** - with (in company with)

**sen** - without (privation)

**ultre** - beyond, in addition to

**proxim** - near, close to (not touching)

**po** - for, at the price of, in exchange for

**dum** - during

**til** - till (prep.) as far as

**till la pordo** - as far as the door

**malgre** - in spite of, notwithstanding

**vice** - instead of, in place of

**segun** - according to

**alonge** - along

**vers** - towards

**ye** - at (indefinite preposition)

## Final Prepositions

The humorous *prepositions* rule in English is: Prepositions are not something you should end a sentence with.

In Ido, the rule is: Prepositions must always be placed before a noun or pronoun.

This is the book he spoke of (= of which he spoke). - **Yen la libro pri qua ilu parolis.**

What are you talking about (= about what ...)? - **Pri quo vu parolas?**

It is frequently possible to combine a final preposition with its verb, or to form a phrase:

This is the stick he came with (= which he brought). - **Yen la bastono quan ilu ad-portis.**

The doctor was sent for (= one caused-to-be-fetched ...). - **On querigis la mediko.**

The bag he came for (= which he fetched). - **La sako quan ilu queris.**

This will do to go on with (= at the beginning). - **Ico konvenos en la komenco.**

The boat had not been intended to be lived in. - **La batelo ne esis destinita por habitado.**

The church had not been preached in for many years. - **On ne prekikabis en la kirko dum multa yari.**

## Prepositions as Adverbs

We know prepositions are used before a noun or pronoun:

Near the brook. - **Proxim la rivereto.**

In Ido, prepositions can be changed to adverbs with the adverbial ending **-e**, and can then stand alone in a sentence without requiring a following noun or pronoun:

The brook ran near. - **La rivereto fluis proxime.**

All prepositions can take the **-e** ending to become adverbs:

**dum** - during, **dume** - meanwhile

**lor** - at the time of, **lore** - then

**pos** - after, **pose** - afterwards

**ante** - before, **antee** - previously

**kontre** - against, **kontree** - on the other hand, contrariwise

The **-a** ending makes the preposition into an adjective: **antea** means *previous*, **posa** - *subsequent*, **kontrea** - *opposing*.

However, *in* and *out* (**en**, **ek**) in a positional non-motion sense have their own forms: **interne** for *in* or *inside*, and **extere** for *out* or *outside*.

## Sense According to Place

Some prepositions are used as adverbs in English with a different sense:

About an hour. - **Cirkum un horo.**

They ran about. - **Li kuris hike ed ibe.**

On the bell. - **Sur la klosho.**

They rang on. - **Li sonigadis.**

Over the way. - **Trans la voyo.**

The storm was over. - **La sturmo esis finita. La sturmo cedabis.**

Up a tree. - **Supre di arboro.**

The door is shut up. - **La pordo esas tote klozita.**

Turn around the horse. - **Turnez cirkum la kavalo.**

Turn the horse around. - **Turnez la kavalo.**

## Prepositions as Verbs

Prepositions, in English, may be attached to a verb, and act like an adverb to modify the sense of the verb:

To walk in, ride in, creep in, run in, float in (= to enter by walking, riding, creeping, running, floating). - **Enirar marchante, vehante, reptante, kurante, flotacante.**

I wind about and in and out. - **Me sinuifas, eniras, ekiras.**

He was trudging through woods, up hill and down dale. - **Ilu pene trairis boski, acensis kolini, decensis vali.**

It was blown off into the dirt. - **Olu esis deportata da la vento aden la fango.**

The consequence of this peculiar use is that an intransitive verb can apparently take an object:

Will you (= would you be willing to) row me to the bridge? - **Ka vu voluntas rem-vehigar me a la ponto?**

The child will cry her eyes out (= will ruin her eyes with tears). - **La infantino ruinos sua okuli per lakrimi.**

Kiss away her tears (= dry her tears, with a kiss). - **Sikigez elua lakrimi per kiso.**

He was argued into allowing the fact (= he was made obligated by arguments to accept the fact). - **Ilu esis obligata per argumenti aceptar la fakto.**

Adjectives are also used in the same way:

They walked themselves dry. - **Li per marcho sikigis su.**



## Lesson 27 - Duadek-e-sepesma Leciono

### Passive Voice Translated by *on/onu*

In English, the passive voice does not show the actor, the author of the action. *The father is loved* does not tell us who is doing the loving. In Ido, the indefinite pronoun **onu** (or **on**) takes the place of the unknown actor, and allows you to keep the sentence in active voice: **Onu amas la patro.** - *someone unnamed* loves the father.

This avoids such passive constructions as: He was not told the whole truth. - **Onu ne dicis ad ilu la tota verajo.** - *someone unnamed* did not tell him the whole truth.

In English, the pronoun *we* is used when the speaker wants to associate himself with the statement: We are all mortal. - **Ni omna esas mortiva.**

But when the statement applies to everybody, **on/onu** should be used instead of **ni**:

When we hear but one bell, we hear but one sound. - **Kande onu audas nur un klosho, onu audas nur un sono.**

The same is true of the pronouns *they*, *you* and the expressions *people*, *somebody*:

They manage those things better in America. - **Onu administras ta kozi plu bone en Amerika.**

You cannot eat your cake and have it. - **Onu ne povas manjar sua kuko e konservar ol.**

People say it's their own fault. - **Onu dicas ke olu esas lia propra kulpo.**

A man is not always lucky. - **Onu ne sempre esas fortuneza.**

## Prepositions before Infinitives

Any preposition can be used before an infinitive, as the infinitive is the equivalent of a noun:

A place for studying - **Loko por studiar**

A place for study - **loko por studio**

Without sleeping. - **Sen dormar.**

Without sleep. - **Sen dormo.**

Before starting. - **Ante departar.**

Before departure. - **Ante parto.**

Without having spoken. - **Sen parolir.**

Preposition *to* is not translated if it is part of the infinitive: I want to come. - **Me volas venar.**

If it means *in order to*, use **por**: He wrote to come. - **Ilu skribis por venar.**

If you could use the form ending in *-ing* with nearly the same sense, the **por** is not necessary: To be or not to be (= being or not being) - **Esar o ne esar.**

Watch for instances where an infinitive is placed with an adjective, and *to* means neither *in order to* nor an infinitive:

Easy to learn (= easily learnable). - **Facile lernebla.**

Difficult to understand. - **Desfacile komprenebla.**

They have only themselves to blame. - **Li ipsa esas sola blaminda.**

## Impersonal Verbs, Again

Verbs like *to rain*, *to snow*, *to hail* have no real subject; therefore the English pronoun *it* is not translated:

It rains. - **Pluvas.**

It snowed. - **Nivis.**

It is going to hail. - **Esas balde grelonta.**

The same is true when the pronoun *it* does not refer to anything:

It is you. - **Esas vu.**

*There is, there are* can simply translated by forms of the verb *to be*, the real subject being the word that follows the verb form:

There is a hill outside the town. - **Esas kolino exter la urbo. Existas (there is) kolino exter la urbo.**

There are twelve hens in the cage. - **Esas dek-e-du hanini en la kajo. Existas (there is) dek-e-du hanini en la kajo.**

But when *there is* points to a person or thing, use **yen**:

There he is! (= There he comes!) - **Yen ilu venas!**

## Sensations and Feelings

For personal sensations or feelings - *I am cold*. - translate such phrases by means of **sentar** - to feel - used reflexively: **Me sentas me kom kolda**. - I feel me as cold. **Vu sentos vu kom tro varma** - You feel you as too warm.

You could use **ye** instead of **kom** as in - **Me sentas me ye kolda (kondiciono). Vu sentos vu ye tro varma (situeso).**

## Time of Day - Review

*An hour* is **horo**, but time by the clock is expressed by **kloko** or **kloki**:

What time is it? - **Qua kloko esas?**

It is two o'clock. - **Esas du kloki.**

At half-past two. - **Ye du kloki e duimo.**

Always express quarter-hours and minutes past the last hour, not before the next one:

A quarter to eight (= three-quarters after seven) - **Sep kloki e tri quarimi, (quaradek-e-kin minuti).**

Twenty to ten (= 9:40). - **Non kloki quaradek.**

Continental timetables, military times, and other special applications use the 24-hour clock:

Twelve noon. - **Dek-e-du kloki** (twelve o'clock)

One p.m. - **Dek-e-tri kloki** (thirteen o'clock).

## Arithmetic - Review

The words *plus*, *minus*, *multiplied by*, *divided by*, are translated **plus** (pronounced [plus]), **minus** [MIN-us], **per** [perr], **sur** [surr]:

$2 + 3 = 5$ , **du plus tri plus un.**

$4 \times 2 = 8$ , **quar per du facas ok.** or, **quar per du es ok.**

$9 / 3 = 3$ , **non sur tri facas tri.**

## Days, Months, etc. - Review

The names of the days of the week are (no capitals):

**sundio, lundio, mardio, merkurdio, jovdio, venerdio, saturdio.**

The names of the months are (also no capitals):

**januaro, februaro, marto, aprilo, mayo, junio, julio, agosto, septembro, oktobro, novembro, decembro.**

The names of the seasons are: **printempo** (*spring*), **somero** (*summer*), **autuno** (*autumn*), **vintro** (*winter*).

The international hotel custom is followed in naming the chief meals:

breakfast - **dejuneto**; lunch - **dejuno** / **repasteto**; dinner - **dineo**; supper - **supeo**.

The corresponding verbs are: **dejunar**, **dejunar** / **repastetar**, **dinear**, **supear**.

## What are Ergative Verbs?

An *ergative* (or *mixed*) verb is a verb that can be either transitive or intransitive, and whose subject when intransitive corresponds to its object when transitive:

**Mea laboro komencas, duras, cesas** (intransitive);

**Me komencas, duras, cesas mea laboro**, or, **laborar** (transitive).

Ergative verbs fall into several general groups:

- Verbs suggesting a change of state - break, burst, form, melt, tear, transform, begin, continue, end
- Verbs of cooking - bake, boil, cook, fry
- Verbs of movement - move, shake, sweep, turn, walk
- Verbs involving vehicles - drive, fly, reverse, run, sail

I start the music → The music starts.

**Me komencas la muziko. → La muziko komencas.**

I stop the playing → The playing stops.

**Me cesas la pleo. → La pleo cesas.**

I finish the work → The work finishes (is done).

**Me finas la laboro. → La laboro finas.**

I turn the wheel of reincarnation → The wheel of reincarnation turns.

**Me turnas la roto di riinkarnaco. → La roto di riinkarnaco turnas.**

I continue the fight → The fight continues.

**Me duras/durigas la kombato. → La kombato duras.**

## ***Lesson 28 - Duadek-e-okesma Leciono***

### **List of Principal Conjunctions**

**ed, e** - and

**od, o** - or

**od ... od** - either ... or

**nek** - nor

**nek ... nek** - neither ... nor

**or** - now (in argument)

**nam** - for (= because)

**do** - then, so (= therefore)

**ma** - but

**tamen** - however, nevertheless, yet

**yen** - here is, here are

**lore ... lore** - now ... then

**kad, ka** - *question word*, whether

**ke** - that

**se** - if

**sive ... sive** - whether ... or

**se ne** - if not

**se ... nur, nur se** - provided that

**ecepte se** - unless

**quale se** - as though

**quankam** - although

**pro quo?** - why?

**por quo?** - what for?

**de kande** - as soon as, since when

**por ne** - lest (with infinitive)

## Compound Conjunctions

In addition to the conjunctions formed from prepositions by adding **ke**, many can be formed from adverbs in the same way:

**tale ke** - so that, in such a way that

**tante ke** - so much that

**tam longe ke** - as long as

**kaze ke** - in case

**kondicione ke** - on condition that

**unfoye ke** - once that

**omnafoye ke** - each time that

**tam ofte ke** - as often as

**time ke** - for fear that

**tante plu ... ke** - all the more ... that

**quante plu ... tante plu** - the more ... the more

**quante min ... tante min** - the less ... the less

**tante plu bone ke** - all the better ... because

## Translate Meaning, not just Words

Word-groups or phrases in Ido rely on the general rule that every word means one definite idea, and can be combined with another word also meaning one definite idea, to form the exact equivalent of meaning for any English phrase, even when the English words have lost the precision of their original meaning. These example will help clarify the concept:

**se** means *if*, **nur** means *only*, **se nur** (= if only) is translated *provided that*.

**de** means *from*, **kande** means *when*, **de kande** is translated *since when?* or *how long?*.

**pro** means *on account of*, **quo** means *what thing*, **pro quo** is

translated *why*?

**quik** means *immediately*, **kande** means *when*, **quik kande** is translated *as soon as*.

**pro** means *on account of*, **to** means *that (thing)*. **pro to** is translated *that's why*.

**quante** means *so much*, **min** means *less*, **tante** means *thus much*, **quante min ... tante min** is translated *the less ... the less*.

For instance:

**Quante min me manjas, tante min me drinkas.** - The less I eat, the less I drink.

**De kande vu lojas hike? Me lojas hike de un monato.** - How long have you lived here? I have lived here one month.

**De kande ilu arivis ...** - As soon as he arrived ...

**Apene ilu arivis, kande elu klozis la pordo.** - He no sooner arrived than she closed the door.

## **Exempli**

Prepare a room in case he comes (should come). - **Preparez chambro pro la kazo se ilu venus.**

In case he comes (will come), show him in. - **En la kazo ke ilu venos, enduktez ilu.**

Very well; we'll take our umbrellas, in case it begins again. - **Bone; ni prenus nia parapluvi, kaze ke olu rikomencus.**

## **Do Something, and Do Something Else**

Very often, between an imperative and an infinitive, *and* cannot be translated by **ed**:

Take care and behave yourself. → Take care that you behave yourself. - **Sorgez ke vu kondutas bone.**

Be careful and see that he does it. → Carefully see that he does it. - **Sorge atencez ke ilu facas ol.**

Be sure and come. → Fail not to come. - **Ne faliez venar.**



## How to translate *as*

The word *as* conveys so many different ideas, that several examples of its translation are more useful than trying to develop rules:

He came in as I spoke (= while I spoke). - **Ilu envenis dum ke me parolis.**

It happened as I told you (= in the way in which I told you). - **Lo eventis quale me predicis a vu.**

They were as like as two peas (comparison). - **Li esis tam simila kam du pizi. Li tam similesis una a l'altra kam du pizi.**

Great as he is, he is not infallible (= although he is great). - **Quankam ilu esas granda, ilu esas eroriva.**

Much as I regret it.. (= however much ..) - **Irge quante me regretas olu ...**

Such as have anything to say .. (= those who) - **Ti qui havas ulo dicenda ..**

It's pluck as does it (= which causes success). - **La audaco esas to quo sucesigas.**

As you are angry, you should not speak (= because you are angry). - **Pro ke vu iracas, vu devas silencar.**

## **Kom e Quale - As and Like**

**Kom** and **quale** both translate *as*, or *like*, but while **kom** implies identity, **quale** only marks resemblance:

He was received like a king.

(and he was a king). - **Ilu esis aceptata kom rejo.**

(though he was not a king). - **Ilu esis aceptata quale rejo.**

He appeared as Hamlet (in the character of Hamlet).

(he looked like Hamlet) - **Ilu aparis quale Hamlet.**

(he was Hamlet in the theatre) - **Ilu aparis kom Hamlet.**

I do not speak as an expert (as one who was an expert would).

**Me ne parolas kom experto.**

## **Nor**

At the beginning of a sentence or clause, **nor** means: *and not*

Nor was he tired. - **Ed ilu ne esis fatigita.**

Nor ... either is translated **nek ... anke**:

I am not tired, nor he either. - **Me ne esas fatigita, nek ilu anke.**

## **-oro and -ilo**

Sometimes, what looks like a suffix in Ido is not a suffix, but is actually part of the root word. For instance, **bulo** is a ball, and **buleto** is a small ball, but **buletino** is not a small, female ball - it is a *bulletin*, a pamphlet or periodical publication.

In the same way, **konduktar** is to conduct. An electrical conductor or conduit is **konduktilo** (a device which conducts). But the conductor on a train is **konduktoro**.

You might think, from that example, that **-oro** is a suffix in Ido. But it's not. **Oro** means *gold*. There is no official **-oro** suffix meaning *person*.

For instance, a male train conductor is **konduktorulo**, and a female train conductor is **konduktorino**, which shows that the root for train conductor is **konduktor-**, including the **-or** ending as part of the root.

To show that a verb has been transformed into a noun to mean a tool for performing the action of the verb, use **-ilo**:

**konduktar** (to conduct, transmit) - **konduktilo** (electrical conductor or conduit)

**kondensar** (to condense) - **kondensilo** (condenser)

**kondensatoro** is not just a tool for condensing (that would be **kondensilo**), but the specific electrical device we call a condenser.

This distinction between tool, device, and person appears in dictionary definitions. It is worthwhile to pay attention to all

nuances of meaning in definitions in Ido-English and English-Ido dictionaries like the Dyer dictionaries, or pure Ido dictionaries like Pesch's.

In Dyer's, **kondensator** is marked with an asterisk (\*). Give special attention to any words that are flagged with an asterisk, because words so marked may be in common usage, but are not *official* Ido words. Using asterisk-marked words might make your Ido expressions less-understandable to those who use *classic* Ido. However, in updated dictionaries, **kondensator** is no longer marked with an asterisk, so it has become official at some point after Dyer's time.

## ***Lesson 29 - Duadek-e-nonesma Leciono***

### **List of Principal Adverbs**

**maxim(e)** - most

**minim(e)** - least

**pluse** - further, moreover

**maxim ... posible** - most .. possible: maxim granda posible - the greatest possible

**minim(e) ... posible** - least .. possible

**tam .. kam posible** - as .. as possible

**admaxime** - at the most

**adminime** - at least

**proxime** - approximately, near

**kelke** - a little

**poke** - little

**sat(e)** - enough

**tro** - too much

**sam-tempe** - at the same time

**nul-tempe** - never

**sempre** - always

**kune** - together

**nun** - now

**ante nun** - ago, before now

**olim** - once upon a time, formerly

**frue** - early

**tarde** - late

**erste** - only, no earlier than

**ca-die** - today

**hiere** - yesterday

**morge** - tomorrow

**ca-vespere** - this evening

**pre-hiere** - the day before yesterday

**pos-morge** - the day after tomorrow

**jus** - just (in the past)

**quik** - at once, immediately

**ankore** - still

**ja** - already

**ne .. ja** - not yet

**interne** - inside

**extere** - outside

**supre** - up, upstairs

**infre** - down, below

**avane** - in front

**dope** - behind

**retro** - backwards

**dextre** - on the right

**sinistre** - on the left

**fore** - far away

**cirkume** - around

**forsan** - perhaps

**komprenende** - of course

**kompreneble** - conceivably, understandably

**mem** - even; still (with comparative)

**ya** - indeed

**nur** - only

**precipue** - chiefly

**aparte** - apart, separately

**itere** - anew, afresh, again

**okazione (di)** - apropos (of)

**oportune** - by the way, by the bye

## How to translate *but*

The word *but* can be:

(1) a conjunction, joining two statements: I like peas, but I do not like beans. - **Me prizas pizi, ma me ne prizas fazeoli.**

(2) a preposition, before a noun or a pronoun in the objective case: All but him like it. - **Omni ecepte ilu prizis ol.**

(3) an adverb, explaining a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: I had but one friend. - **Me havis nur un amiko.**

(4) a pronoun, subject of a verb: There is no one but loves her. - **Nulu esas qua ne amas elu.**

(5) a verb, expressing an action; (6) a noun, expressing a thing done:

But me no buts. - **No opozez a me kontre-dici.**

## How to translate *ever*

The word *ever* may mean (1) all time, always (2) at any time:

(1) The Maple-leaf for ever. - **La acer-folio por sempre.** - I shall love you for ever. - **Me amos vu sempre, sempre.**

(2) If he ever comes, ... - **Se ilu ul-tempe venos, ...**

Ever, in compound words like *whenever*, *wherever*, *whoever*, is translated

**irge, irga**, etc.:

Do whatever you like. - **Facez irgo quon vu volas.**

Whatever might be his anger... - **Irge quala/quanta esas ilua iraco.**

Whoever they may be ... - **Irge qui ilu esas ...**

Whenever I hear the birds singing, - **Irge kande me audas la uceli kantar,**

Whichever is here, - **Irge qua esas hike,**

Give me anything whatever, - **Donez a me irgo.**

Let it be ever so small, - **Irge quante mikra olu esos,**

We have bought ever such a tiny cottage, - **Ni kompris tote mikra rurdometo.**

## How to translate *just*

The word *just* can be

(1) an adjective meaning *correct*, translated **justa**: He made a very just remark. - **Ilu facis tre justa remarko.**

(2) an adjective meaning *righteous*, translated **yusta**: Be just and fear not. - **Esez yusta e ne timez.**

(3) an adverb meaning *the moment before now*, translated **jus**: She has just come. - **El jus arivis.**

(4) an adverb meaning *the moment now coming*, translated **quik**: She is just coming. - **Elu esas nun venanta (quik venonta).** I will just do it, and then I am ready. - **Me quik facos lo, e lore me esos pronta.**

(5) an adverb meaning *exactly*, translated **exakte, juste**: It's just the thing I want. - **Olu esas juste to quon me deziras.**

## How to translate *both*

*Both*, as a pronoun, is translated *we two, they two, the two*: as an adverb, *at the same time together*; or, in many cases, by the use of *also*:

They both went to the station. - **Li du iris a la staciono.**

We were both agreed. - **Ni du konkordis.**

Both the men were drunk. - **Omna du viri esis ebria.**

Both I and my brother think so. - **Me ed anke mea frato opinionas tale.**

All the tourists were both hungry and thirsty. - **Omna turisti sam-tempe hungris e durstis.**

The address was both on the paper and on the envelope. - **La adreso esis sur la papero ed anke sur la kuverta.**



## Lesson 30 - Triadekesma Leciono

### Order of Words

English, having few inflexions, has to arrange its words logically, subject, verb, object: I love him. - **Me amas ilu.** Generally, this word order works well, and is the clearest manner of expression in Ido.

The adjective (if there is only one, and it's not too long) is better placed before the noun: A long way. - **Longa voyo.** (**Voyo longa** would also be correct.)

Adverbs are also normally placed before the word they modify: He truly said he fully understood. - **Ilu vere dicis ke ilu tote komprenas.**

The adverbs **ne** and **tre** must always be placed before the word they modify. Other placements change the meaning of the phrase:

I like him very much. - **Me tre amas ilu.**

Not entirely (= not quite). - **Ne tote.**

Entirely not (= not at all). - **Tote ne.**

### Objects and the Accusative

Any noun, adjective, or pronoun can be made an accusative, but only when it is the object of a verb and placed before the subject. Show you are dealing with an accusative by adding **-n**:

A fine story, he told me! - **Bela rakonton ilu facis a me!**

It was they that I called. - **Lin me vokis.**

The pronoun **il**, **el**, **ol**, are abbreviations for **ilu**, **elu**, **olu**, and their accusatives would be **ilun**, **elun**, **olun**: She it was whom I loved so! - **Elun me tante amis!**

But the accusative is not necessary, if the subject comes before the object in the sentence:

I saw them (= I them saw). - **Me li vidis** is correct, but. **Me lin vidis.** would be clearer.

Use the accusative whenever the object comes before (on the left side of) the verb. e.g. I love you. - **Me tun amoras.**

## Compound Words

Nouns can be united as in English to do away with a preposition:

A tea-cup (= a cup for tea) - **te-taso** (= **taso por teo**)

A steam-ship - **vapor-navo**

The **-o-** between the words depends on the euphony: **skribo-tablo** or **skrib-tablo**, but **tablo-tuko** (not **tabl-tuko**). The hyphen is often better inserted: **fervoyo-vagono** (rather than **fervoyovagono**).

When the compound is formed with adjectives or adverbs, it may be useful to write the adjectival or adverbial termination:

English-speaking people - **Angle-parolanti**

sky-blue - **ciel-blua**

sunburnt - **sun-brulita**

A dark-eyed, curly-headed little boy - **Nigr-okula loklo-hara pueruleto**

Compound words formed with prepositions take the preposition first and remain in the same order as in English: subterranean - **sub-tera**

Such compound words do not require the usual affixes, as the relation is expressed by the preposition: national - **nacionala**, international - **internacionala**

Again: natural - **naturala**, supernatural - **supernaturala**, because - **ala** means **pri**, **naturala** → **pri naturo**, **fenomeno supernaturala** → **fenomeno super naturo**, so **fenomeno supernaturala** is understood to mean **fenomeno pri super naturo**.

For compound words formed by a preposition and a verb, do not make combinations that alter the object of the verb. For instance:

I see the stones at the bottom through the water. - **Me vidas la stoni di la fundo tra la aquo.**

**Tra-vidar** is *to see through*. To use **tra-vidar** in this sentence, you

have to be careful about what is seen, and what is being seen through: **Me tra-vidas la stoni di la fundo en la aquo** (not: **me travidas la aquo**).

The adjective **travidebla**, therefore, cannot mean *transparent*: it only applies to the stones, and means *visible through (the water)*. The word *transparent* is **diafana**: **Stoni travidebla tra diafana aquo**.

## Impersonal Verbs, Once Again

Impersonal verbs are used without a subject, and are followed by an infinitive:

**oportas** - it is necessary

**importas** - it is important

**konvenas** - it is convenient

**decas** - it is proper

**suficas** - it is sufficient

**Oportas levar ni frue morgo.** - We must get up early tomorrow. (It is necessary to raise ourselves early tomorrow.)

Other impersonal verbs can be formed by the use of **esar** with an adjective:

**Esas utila vakuigar la barelo.** - It is useful to empty the barrel.

## Derivation

The derivation of words constructed by adding affixes to roots is a powerful feature of Ido. However, you cannot simply add any affix to any root to come up with an understandable derivation. You have to respect the logical relation of the words and affixes, as there are some combinations that might be grammatically legal, but logically unworkable.

## Deriving Verbs from Nouns

For example, to derive the verb *to address* from the noun *address* (**adreso**, on a parcel or letter), you must think of what one does

with the address. In English, you can use the noun directly as a verb, and say *address the envelope*, or *address the audience*, or even *address the golf ball*, and be correct with all the senses of meaning.

In Ido, you address an envelope by covering it with an address, so use the **-iz-** affix to mean *to cover*: **adreso** → **adresizar** (not **adresar**). To address an audience, use **parolar**. The difference is in the logical relation, which Ido expresses to a very precise degree.

## Deriving Nouns from Verbs

A noun derived from a verb can have logically no other meaning than the state or action expressed by the verb. When the root is a verb of action, the noun derived from it must logically relate to the action itself. You cannot derive the verb *to brush*, from the noun *brush*, because the action is in the root, not in the instrument. The root is the verb of action, **brosar**, and the derived noun **broso** can only mean the act of brushing. To name *a brush* as a noun, describe the *instrument used for brushing* by using the affix **-il-** for *instrument* on the verb for *brush* to create **broсило**. The act, **broso**, is quite different from the instrument, **broсило**, though both can be derived logically from the root **bros-** of the verb **brosar**.

## More Verbs Derived from Nouns

In addition to the affixes that can only be affixes, many roots are used as affixes, to form a kind of compound word. Thus the root **ag-** of the verb **agar** meaning *to act, do, wield*, is used with the roots for many names of instruments, particularly when the name of the instrument came first, and the word for the action describing its use developed later. **Martelo** is a hammer. To hammer something is to wield a hammer, **martelagar**. Using the verb **martelagar** includes the sense of having the tool at the time of the action:

He hammered (at) the picture. - **Ilu martelagis la pikturo.**

To hammer with some other tool, for instance a rock, requires the affix **-uz-** (*to use*), since the affix **-ag-** automatically includes a hammer as the tool:

He hammered (at) the picture with a stone - **Ilu marteluzis la pikturo pri la stono.**

In the same way we have: **klefagar** - to lock, from **klefo** - a lock; **butonagar** - to button, from **butono** - a button; **frenagar** - to apply the brake, from **freno** - a brake; **pedalagar** - to pedal, from **pedo** (foot) → **pedalo** (foot-board or pedal).

## Titles of Courtesy

In addressing noble persons, etc., use the word **Sinioro**, **Siniorulo**, **Siniorino**, followed (when necessary) by the name of the dignity:

**Sinioro Rejo, me humile pregas...**

**Sinioro Episkopo di London.**

**Siniorino Komto - Countess..**

**Yes, Sinioro, - Yes, your Honor, your Worship.**

## Elision

The final **a** of **la** and of adjectives, particularly derived adjectives in **-al-**, may be dropped when the meaning is clear without it:

**Ilu parolis a l'infanto.**

**La nacional sentimento.**

The accent remains on the same syllable as if the **a** was inserted. The definite article **la** may be contracted with certain prepositions: **dal** = **da la**, **dil** = **di la**, **del** = **de la**, **al** = **a la**

## Compound Words, Again

A noun can be the root (that is, subject) of a compound with any element, except those prepositions that would change the role of the noun from a subject to an object:

A steam-ship - **vapor-navo**: A ship (the subject) that moves by means of steam.

But for *submarine*, translating directly as **sub-marō** would mean the ocean (the subject) is below something. The subject is changed into an object by the verb-like action of the preposition. We need to position the ship below the ocean to make *submarine*. So, for a *below-water ship* we apply an adjective to describe *moving under water* to a ship that does the moving:

under-water ship - **sub-mara navo** (places the ship under the water)

Other prepositions showing positional relationships also work better as compound adjectives than they might as compound nouns:

international - **inter-naciona** (positioned among nations)

supernatural - **super-natura** (positioned above or beyond nature)

**fenomeno super-natura** (phenomenon happening beyond nature)

Translating English words that contain prepositions requires some thought:

forearm - **avan-brakio** would be a part at the fore of (in front of) the arm, which is the hand.

**avana-brakio**, changing the preposition **avan** into the adjective **avana**, positions the body part as part of the arm, not separately in front of it, as that part of the arm in front of the elbow, or the (English) forearm.

### **What is a vice-president?**

Because Ido draws upon a number of languages to build an internationally-accepted vocabulary, official words and roots sometimes fit most contributing languages, but not all of them. For instance, the official meaning of **vice** in Ido is *alternative*. That means a **vice-presidanto**, strictly speaking would be an *alternative president*, or a person working in parallel with and equal to the current president. However, the internationally-accepted meaning of vice-president is *sequentially second*, a person standing by to replace the current president if necessary.

Some day, in the far distant future, we may all be speaking Ido as our primary language. Until that day, bear in mind that there may be subtle differences in understanding among native speakers of different languages, and be willing to rephrase your Ido statements when it would be helpful to clarify your meaning.

## ***Appendix A - Derivation, Again***

### **The Three Root Classes**

We have as a word basis the invariable stem, ordinarily termed the *root*, which is selected on the principle of maximum internationality or facility. Disregarding the particles and adverbial forms, these roots fall naturally for the most part into three classes:

- (1) verbal roots indicating an action, as: **ir(ar)**, **ba(tar)**, **salt(ar)**.
- (2) nominal roots denoting a thing, as: **hom(o)**, **dom(o)**, **puer(o)**.
- (3) adjectival roots expressing a quality, as: **bon(a)**, **facil(a)**, **avarl(a)**.

These roots, plus the appropriate terminal letters, **-ar**, **-o**, **-a**, **-e**, constitute the fundamental grammatical forms.

The addition of these grammatical finals, **-ar**, **-o**, **-a**, **-e**, is termed *immediate* or *direct* derivation. *Mediate* or *indirect* derivation is accomplished by means of affixes (prefixes and suffixes), as **des-**, **retro-**, **-estr-**, **-in-**. The sum of the words that can logically be formed from any one root by mediate or immediate derivation constitutes the *word family*.

### **A Root Expresses One Meaning**

It is a fundamental principle that a root expresses one basic signification, modified as it may be by the different affixes, each of which in turn carries one invariable sense. One root, one meaning; one affix, one meaning. Knowing the form (spelling) and meaning of a root, we can logically and clearly express all related ideas by use of the proper affix. This characteristic is termed the principle of *unasenceso*, one sense, one word, uniqueness in signification, unambiguity.

For example, the fundamental idea of music is expressed by the root **muzik-**. This idea of music therefore is carried in all forms of the root: nouns, adjectives, or whatever. The suffix **-isto** indicates a person occupied professionally with something. **Muzik-isto** can therefore only signify a (professional) musician. Given the verbal



root **dorm-ar**, to *sleep*, we know that the noun form is **dormado** and means sleep as a noun and cannot refer to a sleeper or a sleeping place. There is thus a reciprocal relation between form and sense. This carries with it a second principle, that of **reversibility** which Professor Couturat formulated as follows:

"Every derivative must be reversible; that is to say, if one passes (forward) from one word to another of the same family by virtue of a certain rule, one must be able to pass inversely from the second to the first in virtue of the rule which is exactly the reverse of the preceding."

## Deriving Verbs from Nouns, Again

Given **pac-o**, peace, **pac-ar** can only signify to be at peace, in a state of peace.

**Pac-ar** cannot signify to pacify, because if it did the noun form could only mean pacification, the making of peace. To express the idea of to pacify, pacification, we must add the suffix **-if-** which adds to the root the idea of: to make, render, cause to be. **Pac-if-ar** therefore logically expresses the idea of to pacify (someone) and **pac-if-o** translates pacification.

If we should depart from the noun **kron-o**, a crown, the immediate verbal form **kron-ar** could have no rational meaning. **Kron-ar**, as derived from **kron-o** in the sense of a crown, cannot logically express the idea of *to crown (someone)*, because the meaning of the noun inversely derived from *to crown* is and can only logically be the act of crowning, the coronation, not the crown itself. To express the idea of *to crown (someone)*, we use the suffix **-iz-** which adds to the root the idea of *covering, furnishing, providing*. *To crown* is only logically expressed, therefore, by **kron-iz-ar** (**kron**, crown, plus **-izar**, to cover with). From this verbal form, we logically get **kron-izo**, meaning coronation.

This capability of reversing a derivative form and arriving at the original meaning is the practical test of the rightness of a derived form. Attention is especially called to this point because in our *natural* languages, especially the English, almost any simple noun may be used as a verb without change of form ---- we *ship goods* and *ship a crew* and send the goods and the crew to the ship. We

understand such meanings from an inspection of the sentence as a whole and because we are familiar with the diction. In a logically constructed language to be used by diverse linguistic groups such use is not admissible.

It is an obvious fact that a noun derived from a verb, can have logically no other meaning than the state or action expressed by the verb and, consequently, no verb can be directly derived from a noun unless the noun expresses an act or condition, in which case the verb must signify to do that act or be in that condition.

## Deriving Verbs from Adjectives

This is likewise true in regard to the impossibility of deriving verbs directly from adjectives - we must add the appropriate verbal suffix

(**-ig-**, **-esk-**, **-if-**) or, for passive senses, the proper form of the verb **esar**.

## Deriving Nouns from Adjectives, Again

If the adjective expresses a quality essentially human (or animal), the noun form denotes a person (or animate thing): **saj-a**, **-o**, wise (person); **blind-a**, **-o**, a blind (person or animal); **katolik-a**, **-o**, catholic (person). If the adjective expresses a quality essentially non-human, the noun form denotes a thing: **acid-a**, **-o**, acid (adjective and noun); **rekt-at** **-o**, (a) straight (line); **kav-a**, **-o**, hollow (adjective and noun).

If the quality expressed by the adjective is applicable to both animate and inanimate things, the noun form in **-o** can logically stand for either form of thing, and the meaning must be obtained from the context. Where there is likely to be doubt as to the meaning of the noun (whether person or thing) the ambiguity can be removed by adding **-ulo**, **-ino** for persons and **-ajo** for things. For example: **bon-o**, **alt-o**, **perfekt-o** may refer to either persons or things that are good, high, perfect, but **bon-ulo**, **alt-ulo**, **perfekt-ulo** can only apply to persons, and **bon-ajo**, **alt-ajo**, **perfekt-ajo** can only denote inanimate things.

## Appendix B - Affixes

### Notes

The prepositions **en**, **ek**, **for**, **kun**, **inter**, **de**, etc. are also used as prefixes, as: **en-irar**, **ek-irar**; also some adverbs are used as prefixes, as: **plu-alt-igar**, **plu-bel-igar**.

Multiple affixes (prefixes and suffixes) may be added to one root to form new words: **medicin-o**, a medicine; **medicin-ist-acho**, a quack; **vid-ar**, to see; **ne-pre-vid-eb-eso**, impossibility of being foreseen.

### Prefixes

**anti-**, **contra-** - against, counter, opposing. Used only in a few scientific terms: **anti-bakterio**, bactericide; **anti-vermo**, vermifuge.

Ordinarily the preposition **kontre** is used instead of and in the same sense as **anti-**: **kontre-Juda**, anti-semitic; **kontre-skorbuta**, anti-scorbutic. The use of **anti-** therefore should be confined strictly to cases where the prefix has been definitely approved by the scientific and technical committees.

**arki-**, **arch-** - of eminent degree, chief. Used especially in titles: **arki-duk(ul)o**, archduke; **arki-episkopo**, archbishop.

**bo-** - indicates relationship by marriage, as: **bo-patro**, father-in-law; **bo-fratino**, sister-in-law.

**bi-**, **du-** - used in scientific terms, as: **bi-kapa**, bicephalous ; **bi-loba**, bilobate. The numeral **du** can be used to express the same idea: **du-kapa**, two-headed, bicephalous.

Note: **mono-**, **quadri-**, **quinqua-**, **sexa-**, **septua-**, **okto-**, **nona-** are likewise prefixes often used with technical terms.

**des-** - (as found in the English words: destruct, destroy) denoting the direct opposite of the idea to which it is prefixed, as: **des-agreabla**, disagreeable; **des-charjar**, to unload; **des-equilibr-igar**, to unbalance; **des-bel-igar**, to disfigure.

Note: For the difference between **des-** and **ne-** see note under **ne-** in the dictionary. It should have been added that in distinction from **ne-**, which expresses simple negation, **sen-** expresses the idea of privation or lack, as: **sen-denta**, without teeth; **sen-hara**, hairless.

**dis-** - denotes separation or dispersion; apart, asunder: **dis-part-igar**, or **dis-pec-igar**, to dismember; **dis-pozar**, to dispose, lay out; **dis-ruptar**, to disrupt; **dis-donar**, to distribute. Used with verbal roots.

**ek-** (prep) - out of (motion from; made or extracted from; fractional part of), out from, (US) out (forth from), of (made of); **el portis ol ek la chambro** - she carried it out of (US: out) the room; **irar ek la domo** - go out of (US: out) the house; **sis ek dek** - six out of ten; **vazo ek oro** - gold vase; **ek-irar** - to go out, get out, walk out; **ek-apareskar** - to appear to be, to turn out to be; **Ek-apareskabas ke ni lernis en la sama skolo**.

**ex-** - late, former, retired. Indicates one who formerly held a position: **ex-prezidanto**, ex-president; **ex-oficiro**, a former officer.

**gala-** - This is properly an adjective but is used in a few instances as the first element of a composed word: **gala-festo**, gala festival; **gala-robo**, a gala robe.

**ge-** - denotes both sexes taken together: **ge-siori**, Mr. and Mrs., ladies and gentlemen.

Note: This prefix is to be used only when it is desired to emphasize the presence of both sexes. In direct derivation (simple endings in **-ar**, **-o**, **-a**), nouns in general denote undetermined sex, therefore, simple **siori** translates the idea of ladies and gentlemen. Also note that *parents* is translated as **genitori**.

**mi-** - half; partly, semi-, demi-, in the sense of less than is usual, full and normal: **mi-cirklo**, half-circle; **mi-horo**, half an hour; **mi-fratulo**, half-brother; **mi-lumo**, half-light, twilight; **mi-ombre**, half-shade, partial shadow; **mi-mortinta**, half-dead (cf. **quaz-a**, **-e**); **mi-mond-umo**, demi-monde.

- mis-** - denotes erroneous, wrong action; used with verbal roots:  
**mis-komprenar**, to misunderstand; **mis-pronuncar**, to mispronounce; **mis-prezentar**, to misrepresent; **mis-uzo**, misuse.
- ne-** - (adv. used as prefix) not, non-, un-, in-, im-, ir-: **ne-savar**, to be ignorant of; **ne-posibla**, impossible ; **ne-populara**, unpopular; **ne-responsiva**, irresponsible; (cf. **des-**).
- par-** - (used especially with verbal roots) denoting perfection or thorough completion of an action: **par-lernar**, to learn thoroughly; **par-plugar**, to plow thoroughly; **par-lektar**, to read thoroughly or through to the very end; **par-facer**, to do thoroughly, to complete; **par-irar**, to go (through) to the end.
- para-** - (with noun roots) denoting protection against, something to ward off: **para-fairo**, a screen or protection against fire, a fire-guard; **para-fulmino**, some sort of a protection against lightning, a lightning conductor; **para-pluvo**, a protection against rain, an umbrella; **para-vento**, a wind-shield.
- pre-** - before; replaces the preposition **ante** in composed words: **pre-datizar**, to antedate; **pre-destinar**, to predestine; **pre-dicar**, to predict; **pre-hiere**, (on the) day before yesterday; **pre-avino**, great-grandmother.
- pseudo-** - pseudo, false, counterfeit, as in English. A rarely used prefix.
- quadri-** - quadri-, quadru-: quad- ; four; used chiefly in scientific words: **quadri-latera**, quadrilateral; **quadri-peda**, quadruped.
- retro-** - (with verbal roots) retro-, backward), inverse action: **retro-agar**, to retroact; **retro-irar**, to go back(ward).
- ri-** - (with verbal roots) re-, back (to an original or former state or position) again (in the sense of repetition or restoration): **ri-elektar**, to re-elect; **ri-enirar**, to re-enter; **ri-donar**, to give back (again); **ri-facar**, to do over again, remake; **ri-dicar**, to say again, repeat.
- sen-** - -less, without, free from; indicates absence, lack, privation, destitution: **sen-kapa**, headless; **sen-kulpa**, guiltless; **sen-arma**, without arms, weapon-less; **sen-denta**, toothless;

**stif(a)** - indicates that the person spoken of is a relative only through the second marriage of a parent and is not a relative by blood: **stif(a)-filiino**, step-daughter; **stif(a)-matro**, step-mother.

## Suffixes

**-ach-** - imparts a pejorative (contemptuous, disparaging) sense to the composed word: **hund-acho**, cur; **infant-acho**, brat; **medik-acho**, quack; **parol-ach-ar**, to jabber, prate; **rid-(et)-achar**, to giggle; **dolc-acha**, sickly sweet, mawkish.

**-ad-** - added to verbal roots to denote the repetition or continuation of the act: **parol-adar**, to speak (at length); **salt-adar**, to keep jumping.

Note: The following examples show the distinction between **-ado** and **-o**: **pafar**, to shoot; **paf** a single shot; **paf-ado** signifies a repeated discharge, a volley; from **fraper**, to strike, we get **frap-o**, a single blow; **frap-ado**, a beating.

**-ag-** - (the root of the verb **ag-ar**, to do, act) used with the names of instruments and the like to indicate the action done with the instrument: **martel-agar**, to hammer; **buton-agar**, to button; **kanon-agar** (or **pafar**), to shoot a cannon; **manu-agar**, to handle; **kruc-agar**, to crucify.

Note: This suffix is necessary because if such word were verbalized by direct derivation (using simply **-ar**), the noun inversely derived from the verb would logically refer to the act, not the instrument (to the hammering, buttoning, not to the hammer(s), button(s)). By using the separate suffix (**-ag-**), the noun for the act is **martel-ag(ad)o**, **buton-ag(ad)o**, and the primitive words: **martelo**, **butono** refer to the instruments.

**-aj-** - with nouns and adjectives: it denotes a thing possessing the quality of, or made out of, the material expressed by the original word: **mol-ajo**, a soft material or thing; **bel-ajo**, a beautiful thing; **lign-ajo**, something made of wood, woodwork. It may also denote an act: **amik-al-ajo**, an act of friendship; **infant-al-ajo**, a childish act. With transitive or mixed verbs, it has a passive sense, referring to the thing, and being identical with **-ata-** or **-ita-**: **send-ajo**, (**send-ata**, **send-ita**), something sent; **chanj-ajo** (**chanj-ato**, **chanj-ita**), something (which is) changed; **manj-ajo**, something eaten; (cf. **-ur**). With intransitive verbs: it has an active sense and is

equivalent to **-anta-**: **rept-ajo**, something which creeps (**rept-ero** is a preferable form); **exist-ajo**, something existing.

Note 1: With transitive verbs the active sense is ordinarily expressed by **-iv-**, as: **garnis-ar** (tr.) to garnish, embellish; **garnis-ivo** is then something which embellishes; **garnis-ajo** would refer to the thing embellished; **orn-ivo** is something which ornaments, an ornament; **orn-ajo**, would refer to something (which is) ornamented, not the ornament itself.

Note 2: In this connection it may be said that the suffixes **-iv-** and **-em-** have essentially an active sense; while **-ebl-**, **-ind-**, **-end-**, have an essentially passive meaning.

**-al-** - With nouns, it denotes: relating to, pertaining to, appropriate to: **autun-o**, autumn; **autun-ala**, autumnal; **rej-o**, king, queen; **rej-ala**, royal; **nacion-ala**, national; **sexu-ala**, sexual. It is frequently equivalent to the genitive: **aquo di river-o** = **river-ala aquo**. As a practical rule: an adjective in **-ala** is appropriate wherever it can be replaced by the genitive of the noun it is derived from: **riverala** = **di rivero**.

Note 1: **-al-** should not be appended to proper names to form adjectives; **dramati da Shakespeare**, Shakespearean dramas. The use of **-al** would signify dramas relating to or analogous to those of Shakespeare.

Note 2: Difference of meaning and use between **-a** and **-ala**: **-a** is the primary grammatical final of the great class of words which fundamentally express quality: **blu-a**, **simpl-a**, **facil-a**. It carries the signification of: which is..., who is...; consequently, **blu-a**, (which is) blue; **simpl-a**, (what is) simple; **facil-a ago**, an act which is easy. Added to nominal roots denoting a substance it has the same meaning: **marmor-a statuo**, a statue made of marble, which is marble; **or-a vazo**, a (made of) gold vase; **aqu-a voyo**, a water-way (a way composed of water). The suffix **-ala** is the ordinary adjectival termination appended to that large class of roots which are nouns in their fundamental significance. It expresses the idea: pertaining to, relative to, as we find it used in thousands of English words. (except where the adjective is used to denote a substance out of which a thing is made, composed of, as in **marmor-a**, **or-a**, **aqu-a**). We



therefore say: **puer-ala ago**, a childish act, an act appropriate or suitable to a child, (not **puer-a ago**, which could only logically signify: an act which is a child!); **aqu-ala ludi**, water sports, sports relating to, pertaining to water (not **aqu-a ludi**, which could only mean: sports made of water!). **nacion-ala legi**, national laws, (**nacion-a legi** can only mean: laws which are a nation!); on the other hand, an **aqu-a voyo**, a water-way (as a canal), widely differs from an **aqu-oz a voyo**, a way (road) full of water (puddles). Note that where there is a composed word, such as: **internacion-a**, the adjective form is always in **-a**, not **-ala**: the idea being that the first part of the composed word (**inter-**) sufficiently indicates the relationship. Also after roots compounded with **sen-** the **-a** is always used, not **-ala**, **-oz a**: **sen-esper-a**, hopeless, not **sen-esper-oz a** !; **sen-viva korpo**, a lifeless body.

- an-** - denotes a member, inhabitant, partisan, adherent, as: **senat-ano**, senator; **vilaj-ano**, villager; **eklezi-ano**, a church member.
- ar-** - denotes a collection, group, set (of things or beings). It is to be generally understood as referring to the most extensive collective; **hom-aro** means humanity, not a group of persons; (cf. Talmey's Text Book, p. 42). However, this suffix is quite frequently found to be used vaguely for any group of persons or collection of things.
- ari-** - indicating the object of an action, the recipient of an action or one upon whom a right, especially legal, is conferred. In many cases, it corresponds to the English suffix **-ee**: **pag-ario**, payee; **grant-ario**, grantee; **don-ario**, donee.
- atr-** - like (-ish); of the nature of, or having nearly the same appearance, qualities or characteristics; similar: **flava**, yellow; **flav-atra**, yellowish; **sponj-o**, sponge: **sponj-atra**, spongy; **metal-atra**, metallic; used ordinarily with non-verbal roots, and referring to things, not persons (cf. **-em-**). Note: The root **simil-** is used in the same sense as **-atr-**. The golden era of jazz.: **L'epoko or-atra di jazo. L'epoko or-simila di jazo.**
- e-** - colored, having the color of: **or-o**, gold; **or-ea**: golden; **lakt-o**,

milk; **lakt-ea**, milk-colored; **sang-o**, blood; **sang-ea**, blood-colored; (**sango-koloro**: blood-color).

- ebl-** - like -able, -ible; added to transitive verbal roots to express possibility. It has an essentially passive sense (cf. **-iv-**): **vid-ar**, to see; **vid-ebla**, visible; **rupt-ar**, to break; **rupt-ebla**, breakable; **kred-ebla**, credible.
- ed-** - contents of; (-ful); denotes the quantity which fills something or (with verbal roots) the quantity determined by the nature of the act: **glas-o**, a glass; **glas-edo**, a glassful; **manu-o**, a hand; **manu-edo**, a handful; **glut-ar**, to swallow, **glut-edo**, a swallow (quantity determined by the act of swallowing); **pinch-ar**, to pinch; **pinch-edo**, a pinch, a nip (quantity determined by the act of pinching or grasping with finger tips).
- eg-** - denoting augmentation, intensity, a higher or extreme degree: **pluv-o**, rain; **pluv-ego**, a downpour or torrent of rain; **varm-a**, warm; **varm-ega**, hot; **grand-ega**, immense, very big. It is possible to use this suffix also with verbal roots. **manj-eg-ar** = to hugely eat, to devour. The students burst into laughter. **La studenti rid-eg-eskis**.
- em-** - joined especially to verbal roots signifies: (persons) inclined to; disposition, bent: **atak-ar**, to attack; **atak-ema**, aggressive; **babil-ar**, to chatter; **babil-ema**, talkative, gossipy; **labor-ar**, to work; **labor-ema**, industrious; (cf. **-atr-**).
- end-** - used to form adjectives from verbal roots; has an essentially passive sense; indicating something to be or which must be done: **kred-ar**, to believe, **kred-enda**, (something) which must be believed; **pag-ar**, to pay; **pag-enda**, something which must be paid; **solv-ar**, to solve; **solv-enda**, something which must be solved; (cf. note under **-ind-**).
- er-** - denotes a person occupied in a customary, though not professional activity or occupation: **fum-ar**, to smoke, **fum-ero**, smoker, (one who habitually smokes); **dans-ero**, dancer (but not a professional); **fotograf-ero**, an amateur photographer. This suffix is also used for animals (or even things) to denote a characteristic action: **rept-ar**, to crawl;

**rept-ero**, a reptile (cf. **-ajo** with intransitive verbs); **rod-ar**, to gnaw; **rod-ero**, a rodent; **klim-ar**, to climb; **klim-ero**, climber (a plant, for instance, which has a tendency to climb).

Note: It differs from the present participle in that **-ero** refers to an habitual act, while **-anto** indicates a person performing a mere act at the present time. **dans-anto** is simply a person now dancing (possibly one who never danced before); **dans-ero**, refers to a person accustomed to dance (though not professionally); (cf. **-ist**).

**-eri-** - denotes an establishment, especially industrial: **imprim-erio**, a printing establishment; **distil-erio**, a distillery; **lakt-erio**, a dairy; **chapel-erio**, a hat factory; (cf. note under **-ey-**).

**-es-** - corresponds to the English suffixes **-ion**, **-ness**, **-ity**, **-ship**, etc.; used abstractly; denoting with non-verbal roots a state or quality: **infant-o**, a child; **infant-eso**, infancy, childhood, childishness; **malad-a**, sick; **malad-eso**, sickness; **bel-eso**, beauty; **qual-eso**, quality; **vir-eso**, manliness, virility. With verbal roots, it denotes a passive state: **exhaust-ar**, to exhaust; **exhaust-eso**, exhaustion (state of being exhausted); **expans-ar**, to expand; **expans-eso**, expansion.

Note: This suffix is the root of the verb **es-ar** (to be).

**-esk-** - forms intransitive verbs denoting: to begin to, become, start, get, come to be: **dorm-ar**, to sleep; **dorm-eskar**, to fall asleep; **irac-eskar**, to fly into a rage, begin to be mad; **pal-a**, pale; **pal-eskar**, to turn pale; **rich-a**, rich; **rich-eskar**, to get, become rich. **petr-o**, stone; **petr-eskar**, to become a stone.

**-estr-** - head of, chief of: **urb-o**, city; **urb-estro**, mayor; **nav-o**, ship; **nav-estro**, captain.

**-et-** - forms diminutives or indicates a smaller degree or qualitative change: **mont-o**, mountain; **mont-eto**, hill; **river-o**, river; **river-eto**, a brook; **bel-a**, beautiful; **bel-eta**, pretty; **varm-a**, warm; **varm-eta**, lukewarm; **rid-ar**, to laugh, **rid-etar**, to smile; **dorm-etar**, to sleep a little, take a nap. It is also used as an affectionate diminutive: **patr-eto**, daddy; **matr-eto**, little mother, dear mother.

**-ey-** - denotes the place of (or for) the action or thing characterized

by the root (generally a room or building): **kaval-o**, horse, **kaval-eyo**, place for a horse or horses, a stable; **koqu-ar**, to cook; **koqu-eyo**, a place for cooking, a kitchen; **manj-ar**, to eat; **manj-eyo**, a place for eating, a dining room.

Note: This suffix can be sufficiently distinguished from **-eri** by the following examples: **lav-ar**, to wash; **lav-eyo**, is a place for washing, a wash-room; **lav-erio**, is a washing establishment, a laundry; **manj-eyo** is simply a place to eat; **manj-erio** is an eating establishment: a restaurant; (cf. note under **-i-**).

**-i-** - denotes a domain, province, country, depending upon the authority of the person involved: **rej-o**, king, queen; **rej-io**, kingdom; **duk-o**, duke, duchess; **duk-io**, a duchy; **episkop-io**, diocese; **parok-io**, parish.

Note: With the suffix **-ey-**, instead of **-i-**, the above words would refer to residences, palaces, castles: **duk-eyo**, a ducal palace; **episkop-eyo**, residence of a bishop. **rej-eyo**, royal palace.

**-id-** - denotes offspring, descendant: **izrael-ido**, an Israelite; **rej-ido**, the offspring of a king; **Napoleon-ido**, a descendant of Napoleon. This suffix refers only to offspring of persons. For progeny other than of persons, **-yun-** is used: **bov-yuno**, a calf; **kaval-yuno**, a foal; (cf. **-yun-**).

**-ier-** - with persons, it denotes an individual characterized by a certain attribute, thing or peculiarity: **kuras-o**, cuirass, armor; **kuras-iero**, armor-clad-person; **rent-o**, annuity, **rent-iero**, annuity-holder, annuitant, person of independent means. **-ier-** can also designate a tree or plant which bears, produces: **pom-o**, an apple, **pom-iero**, an apple tree; **roz-o**, a rose; **roz-iero**, a rose bush. With things, it denotes a holder, stand, etc. into which the thing is appropriately put: **sigar-o**, cigar; **sigar-iero**, a cigar-holder; **plum-iero**, a pen-holder; **kandel-iero**, a candlestick.

Note: This last use of the suffix is somewhat similar to the use of **-uyo**, but **-uyo** refers to a case, box, chest, sheath: **sigar-uyo**, a cigar box; **plum-uyo**, a box for pens; **kandel-uyo**, a receptacle for candles.

**-if-** - added to nominal roots to form intransitive verbs denoting: to

generate, produce, secrete: **sang-o**, blood; **sang-ifar**, to bleed, to lose blood; **urin-ifar**, to secrete urine, to urinate; **sudor-o**, perspiration; **sudor-ifar**, to perspire; **pom-ifar**, to bear apples; **flor-ifar**, to flower. This suffix is particularly useful to indicate the manufacture, making of tools and other articles: **martel-o**, a hammer; **martel-ifar**, to make, manufacture hammers (to hammer something is expressed by **martel-agar**); **martel-if-isto**, a hammer maker.

- ig-** - added to adjectives and nouns to form verbs with a transitive sense, denoting: to make, render, transform into: **petr-o**, a stone; **petr-igar**, to petrify; **fil-o**, a thread, **fil-igar**, to transform (something) into thread; **bel-a**, beautiful; **bel-igar**, to beautify; **rekt-a**, straight, **rekt-igar**, to straighten; **larj-a**, broad; **larj-igar**, to broaden.

Note 1: This suffix is also used as an independent verb meaning: to make, to render, to cause: (**igar richa** = **rich-igar** = to enrich). With intransitive verbs, it gives an active sense (= **ig-ar xxx-anta**), thus transforming them into transitive verbs: **dorm-ar**, to sleep; **dorm-igar**, to put (someone) to sleep (= **ig-ar dorm-anta**); **pac-ar**, to be at peace; **pac-igar**, to pacify; **mort-ar**, to die; **mort-igar**, to cause to die, put to death. With transitive verbs, it has a passive sense (= **ig-ar xxx-ata**), usually followed by the preposition **da**; **skrib-igar** = **igar skribata**. Examples of this use can be found in the dictionary under **da** and **ig-ar** (cf. Talmoy's Text Book, pp. 48, 49 and note 21).

Note 2: The use of **-igar** with **da** and transitive verbs in a passive mode is an awkward construct for English speakers. More direct constructions in active voice may be a better choice: **me igas Robert skribar letro** = I make Robert write a letter, (instead of: **me skribigas letro da Robert** = **me igas letro skribata da Robert** = I cause a letter be written by Robert).

- ik-** - denotes: sick of, suffering from; refers to a person having the disease, not the disease itself: **artrit-o**, arthritis; **artrit-iko**, an arthritic; **alkohol-iko**, an alcoholic patient. **tuberklos-o**, tuberculosis; **tuberklos-iko**, a tubercular patient. Note: In such cases, the suffix **-ala** would be an adjective referring to the disease, not to the person who has

it: **artrit-o**, arthritis; **artrit-ala doloro**, arthritic pain.

**-il-** - added to verbal roots, it denotes the instrument, the tool or the means of performing an action: **bros-ar**, to brush; **bros-ilo**, a brush; **paf-ar**, to shoot; **paf-ilo**, a shooting instrument, as a gun; **telegraf-ilo**: a telegraphing instrument; **bar-ar**, to bar; **bar-ilo**, a barrier.

Note: In cases where there are many kinds of instruments to perform a particular action, more appropriate words should be used, if they are available, in place of **-il-**, which carries a general meaning: **skrib-ilo** may refer to any kind of writing instruments: pen, pencil, typewriter, etc...; therefore it is ordinarily desirable to use in place of **-il-**, the words: **plumo**, **krayono**, **skribmashino**; **tranch-ilo** (**tranch-ar** = to cut) may refer to any cutting instrument, therefore **kultelo** should be used when a knife is meant. Use **fusil-o** in place of **paf-ilo** when a gun is meant.

**-in-** - signifies an individual of the female sex: **frat-o**, brother or sister; **frat-ino**, sister; **spoz-ino**, wife; **bov-ino**, cow.

**-ind-** - with verbal roots, creates adjectives which signify: deserving to be, worthy of, meriting: **laud-ar**, to praise; **laud-inda**, praiseworthy, laudable; **respekt-inda**, respectable, deserving of respect.

Note: This suffix clearly differs from **-end-**: **libro lekt-inda**, a book worth reading; **libro lekt-enda**, a book which must be read; **Carthago destrukt-inda**, Carthage is worthy of destruction; **Carthago destrukt-enda**, Carthage must be destroyed. The first indicates an opinion, the second, an intention, a resolution.

**-ismo-** - denotes a system, doctrine, cult: **social-ismo**, socialism; **imperial-ismo**, imperialism; **Katolik-ismo**, Catholicism.

**-ist-** - denotes a person engaged permanently in some occupation, profession: **botanik-isto**, botanist; **pord-isto**, doorkeeper; **dent-isto**, dentist; **kant-isto**, a professional singer; (cf. **-er-**). By extension, **-ista**, **-isto** refers to the adherent of a party, system, doctrine: **social-isto**, socialist.

Note: A merchant may be distinguished from a producer by using **xxx-vend-isto** for the former and **xxx-if-isto** for the latter: **mobl-o**, furniture; **moblo-vend-isto**, a dealer in

furniture; **mobl-if-isto**, a furniture maker.

**-iv-** - added to verbal roots; has essentially an active signification: capable of, that can (do): **instrukt-ar**, to instruct; **instrukt-iva**, instructive; **suggest-ar**, to suggest; **suggest-iva**, suggestive; **konvink-ar**, to convince; **konvink-iva**, convincing. The noun form with this suffix is particularly useful in technical terms: **atrakt-ar**, to attract; **atrakt-iva**, -**ivo**, attractive; **nutrar**, to nourish; **nutr-iva**, -**ivo**, nutritive; **kondukt-iv-eso**, conductivity.

Note: This suffix differs from **-anta** in that **-iva** denotes a permanent state, **-anta**, a temporary condition. **-iva** signifies what has naturally and essentially the basic property indicated by the verbal root. For example, a substance which accidentally causes purging is not necessarily a purgative by nature (**purg-iv-a**, -**o**), but only **purg-anta** for the time being. A text-book can be said to be **instrukt-iva** even though no one studies it, but it cannot be said to be **instrukt-anta** unless someone is reading it.

**-iz-** - added especially to noun roots to form transitive verbs signifying: to cover with, supply with, furnish with, provide with, ornament with: **oro**, gold; **or-izar**, to cover (something) with gold, to gold-plate; **arm-o**, weapon, arm; **arm-izar**, to arm, (to weaponize); **kron-o**, a crown; **kron-izar**, to crown (somebody).

Note: The comparative use of **-ifar**, **-igar**, **-izar**, **-eskar**, may be seen in the following examples: **burjon-o**, a bud; **burjon-ifar** = to produce buds, to bud; **burjon-izar** = to cover something with buds; **burjon-igar** = to cause something to bud; **burjon-eskar** = to become a bud. **sal-o**, salt; **sal-ifar**, to produce salt. We salt (**sal-izas**), or butter (**butr-izas**) our bread to give it the proper taste, and we salt (**sal-izas**, put salt on) our fish to preserve them. From the intransitive verb **sid-ar**, be seated, we derive the transitive verb **sid-igar**, to seat, cause some one to sit down, and **sid-eskar**, to take one's seat, (start) to sit down. The suffixes **-izar**, **-igar** have a transitive sense; **-eskar** has an intransitive sense.

**-oz-** - defines adjectives denoting: full of, containing, ornamented

with, having in itself: **por-o**, a pore; **por-oza**, porous; **por-oz-eso**, porosity (state); **kuraj-o**, the courage; **kuraj-oza**, courageous; **joy-o**, the joy; **joy-oza**, joyous.

Note: The difference between **-a** and **-oza**: **aqua voyo**, a water-way, (a way which is water, as a canal), **aqu-oza voyo**, a road full of water (puddles, etc.); (cf. note under **-al-**).

**-ul-** - denotes the male sex: **frat-ulo**, brother; **spoz-ulo**, husband; **kaval-ulo**, stallion; **kat-ulo**, tomcat. (cf. **-in-**).

Note: This suffix is sometimes omitted for euphony when the sex of the noun is made clear by the context. For example, **abad-ulo** (a monk) may be shortened to **abado** in a text where there is no mistaking in the meaning. Strictly speaking, however, **abado** carries with it no sex distinction.

**-um-** - is used with a few roots to form derivative meanings which the other suffixes cannot logically express. It is analogous to the use of **ye** among the prepositions. Meanings must be looked up in the dictionary. It is not to be used arbitrarily, but only for derivatives authorized by the Idist Academy. Examples: **kolo**, a neck; **kol-umo**, collar; **kruco**, a cross; **kruc-um-ar**, to cross (roads, etc.); **folio**, a leaf, a page; **foli-um-ar**, to turn the leaves of (a book, etc.); **formik-o**, an ant; **formik-umar**, to swarm, to team.

**-un-** - sometimes used as a suffix to denote one individual unit of a substance which naturally consists of many such units. **sabl-o**, sand; **sabl-uno**, a grain of sand; **grel-o**, hail; **grel-uno**, a hailstone.

Note: **grano**, a grain, is preferable to **-uno** in expressing one individual unit of corn; rye, wheat: **sekal-o**, rye; **sekal-grano**, grain of rye. **Maiz-o**, corn; **maizo-grano**, grain of corn; **frument-o**, wheat; **frumento-grano**, a grain of wheat.

When a substance has no natural units, **-uno** is not appropriate and instead of it use words like **peco** (a piece), **floko** (a flake), **parto**, (a part), **parteto** (a small part), etc.: **nivo-floko**, a snow flake, **sukro-peco**, piece of sugar. (Talmey, Text Book, p. 50)

**-ur-** - joined to verbal roots to distinguish the result, or product of an act, from the act itself: **pikt-uro**, a picture (as distinguished from the act of painting, **pikt-o**, **-ado**);



**imprim-uro**, the print (**imprim-ado** indicates only the act of printing); **apert-ar**, to open; **apert-uro**, an opening; **fend-ar**, to split; **fend-uro**, a split, (the result of splitting).

Note: In many cases there is no real distinction between the act and its result, therefore the termination in **-o** is sufficient in those cases: **la abandono di navo**, the abandonment of a ship (**abandonar** = to abandon, **navo** = ship). Sometimes this signification can as well, or even better, be expressed by using **-aj-**: **dic-ar**, to say; **dic-ajo**, what is said or was said; **donac-ar**, to give a gift, to donate; **donac-o**, the act of donating a gift; **donac-ajo**, what is given, a gift (cf. **donac-ata**, **donac-ita**). There exists, however, many cases where the result or product of the act is not identical with the passive thing acted on and therefore **-uro** must be used: **imit-ar**, to imitate; **imit-ajo** is the thing imitated (the passive thing of the act, cf. **imit-ata**, **imit-ita**); **imit-uro** is then the imitation made from the thing imitated (it is the product of the act); **kopi-ar**, to copy; **kopi-uro**, the copy, is made from the **kopi-ajo**, the original thing copied; **traduk-ar** = to translate; **traduk-uro**, a translation, is certainly different from **traduk-ajo**, which is the text from which it was translated. **-ajo** indicates either something possessing the property given by the original root (**mol-a**, soft; **mol-ajo**: something soft; **bel-ajo**: something beautiful, cf. note under **-aj-**) or refers to something existing prior to the act (as **manj-ajo**: food). **-ur-** implies the production of something which, until the act, had no existence, as **imprim-uro**: the printed text (**imprim-ajo** would refer to the text used to make the imprint).

**-uy-** - with nominal roots denotes a receptacle (ordinarily a case, sheath, box, chest): **monet-o**, money; **monet-uyo**, a purse; **ink-uyo**, an inkwell; **sup-uyo**, a soup tureen; **violin-uyo**, a violin case; **sigar-uyo**, a cigar-box (not a cigar-holder, which is: **sigar-iero**; cf. note under **-iero**).

**-yun-** - (taken from the independent root **yun-a**: young) is used to indicate the young of animals (cf. **-id-**): **bovo**, a bull / cow; **bov-yuno**, a calf; **han-o**, a hen / rooster; **han-yuno**, pullet.

## Appendix C - Numerals and Compounds

### Numeral Suffixes

- esm-** - ordinal numerals: **un-esma**, first; **du-esma**, second.
- im-** - fraction: **tri-ima**, a third (part); **quar-imo**, a quarter.
- op-** - distributive: **quar-ope**, in fours, four at a time.
- opl-** - multiplying suffix: **du-opla**, double; **tri-ople kin esas dek-e-kin**, three times five is fifteen.

Where numerals are used in connection with the word *time*, the root **foy(o)** is used as a suffix: **du-foye**, two times, twice; **quar-foye**, four times; **tri-foya eko**, an echo repeated three times.

### Numeral Punctuation

The Idist Academy has not as yet given any decision as to the proper way of marking the decimal point and separating large numbers. To prevent possible misunderstanding, the student is advised to follow the method used in *Progreso* and the majority of Idist journals: use a comma for the decimal point and a period between the other numerals: 4.300,10; four thousand, three hundred, and ten one-hundredths. This is the opposite of ordinary English usage. However even today quite a many Idists follow the ordinary English usage as in 4,300.10.

### Compound Words, Once Again

The general rule for determining the sense of a compound word is that the last word is the principal one (the described word), and the first word of the compound carries a sort of adjectival sense which describes the last: **vapor-navo**, steamship; **skrib-tablo**, writing table; here the root idea is provided by **navo**, **tablo** modified by the descriptive words: **vapor-**, **skrib-**. **Ped-frapar**, to kick with the foot; **avan-abrakio**, forearm; **en-irar**, to go in, to enter, are other examples of composition which fall under the general rule. In a few combinations, especially in certain prepositional-adjectival ones as: **inter-naciona**, **trans-atlantika**, **trans-oceana**, **inter-**

**kosta, du-masta**, the significations must be taken by considering the two parts as forming one whole, the words being of equal value (**internaciona** = what is among the nations). Such combinations are not many and can be easily understood from their international uses.

## **Appendix D - Suffixes -aj- and -ur-**

Voluntez uzar **-aj-** preske sempre kande vua substantivo koncernas la verbo. Ma kande la verbo produktas la substantivo per irga procedo kemiala od altra kelke kompleksa, uzez **-ur-**. La sufijo **-ur-** do indikas ula procedo artificala da homo.

Vendajo - venduro: Vendajo esas irgo quan vu deziras vendar.  
Venduro esas pekunio o profito pos ke vu vendabas vua vendajo.

Vundajo - vunduro: De la verbo vundar: vundo = ago qua efektigas la vunduro = produktajo qua divenas per l'ago, dum ke vundajo = (exemple) vundita pedo. Vundajo esas vundita pedo. Vunduro esas sango pos la procedo dal cirkulal sistemo.

Afrankajo - afrankuro: Afrankuro existas en la Franca ma ne afrankajo; onu dicas ke la letro o la karto o la pako esas afrankita. De la verbo afrankar: afranko = l'ago, afrankuro = postal marko o la sumo di ti, dum ke afrankajo = letro qua esas afrankita. Afrankajo esas letro qua esas afrankita. Afrankuro esas profito del afrankajo por postokontoro.

Fendajo - fenduro: De la verbo fendar: fendo = l'ago, fenduro = loko ube la tero o roko esas fendita, dum ke fendajo = objekto fendita, (sive tero, roko, glacio, ligno e.c.). Fendajo esas objekto fendita, (sive tero, roko, glacio, ligno e.c.). Fenduro esas loko ube la tero o roko esas fendita. Fenduro esas truo o foso, aden-ube aquo od insekti povas invadar.

Fotografajo e fotografuro: De la verbo fotografar: fotografo = l'ago, fotografuro = la objekto diveninta per l'ago, dum ke fotografajo = la objekto fotografita.

Rezultajo - rezulturo: Rezultar esas netransitiva verbo, do on povas aplikar -ajo: rezultajo. Ma on povus anke havar rezulturo (videz supere la sufijo -uro). Onu generale uzas *rezultajo*, pro ke rezultar esas netransitiva verbo ed onu ne darfas dicar *rezulturo*. Tamen kande onu aplikas kompleksa procedo por ganar la rezultajo, onu darfus uzar *rezulturo* (*takaze, artificala*).

## ***Appendix E - Edition History***

Here are some details that have been unearthed on the various editions of the work *Ido for All*. The goal of this appendix is to preserve the history, and to give credit where credit is due.

### **First edition 1975**

This is a print book written by Niklas ApGawain, published by *The International Language (Ido) Society of Great Britain*, in Cardiff, Wales.

The book itself appears to be out of print. The publisher has been dormant for some years, according to Robert Carnaghan, 2024-01-01, and its bookstore is no longer operating, according to Terry Minty, 2024-02-05.

However, there are a couple *descriptions* of the book:

**ApGawain, Niklas: Ido for All. Book 1. Grammar, Grammatical Exercises, Key, Ido-English and English-Ido Vocabularies. /Cardiff/ 1975: The International Language (Ido) Society of Great Britain [publisher]. 59 p. [RH: 72/886]. Rieditesis en 2010. [Republished in 2010.] Trovebla en <http://idomondo.org/skolo.1.8.pdf>. [Findable in <http://idomondo.org/skolo.1.8.pdf>.]**

This reference appears in the document *Bibliografio di Ido 3ma ed 2020* [*Bibliography of Ido 3rd edition 2020*], at [https://www.taziocarlevaro.ch/dds\\_ling\\_storici/B8%20Carlevaro%20et%20alii%20-%20Bibliografio%20di%20Ido%203ma%20ed%202020.pdf](https://www.taziocarlevaro.ch/dds_ling_storici/B8%20Carlevaro%20et%20alii%20-%20Bibliografio%20di%20Ido%203ma%20ed%202020.pdf).

The second description:

**Ido for All (ApGawain), 59pp, 1975, 12 lessons in basic Ido**

**with exercises and key – £4.00**

appears in the document *KATALOGO DI IDO-LIBRI*  
[*CATALOGUE OF IDO BOOKS*],  
<https://www.idolinguo.org.uk/katalog.htm>.

**Contributors**

Without a copy of the book, whether there were other contributors to the book is not able to be determined. See the notes on P. D. Hugon, J. L. Moore, and L. de Beaufront, in the sixth edition ("1.4"), below.

**Copyright**

Again, without a copy of the book, one might presume the copyright was 1975 by the publisher, The International Language (Ido) Society of Great Britain, or the author, Niklas ApGawain, inferring from the descriptions above.

**Content**

The first edition had only Lessons 1-12, according to the second description above.

**Second edition July 1999, "1.0"**

**Third edition August 1999, "1.1"**

**Fourth edition February 2000, "1.2"**

**Fifth edition May 2000, "1.3"**

No copies of these documents have been found. There are references to them in the sixth (1.4) and eighth (1.6) editions (see below). There they are named, respectively:

1.0 / 1999-07-26

1.1 / 1999-08-03

1.2 / 2000-02-29

1.3 / 2000-05-10

## **Revisers**

Since these editions are all so closely dated, and somewhat close to the date of 1.4, it seems likely the revisers are the same as 1.4's.

## **Sixth edition February 2005, "1.4"**

Released 2005-02-13.

Copies of this document are here:

[http://dicionario.free.fr/kursi/ido\\_course.pdf](http://dicionario.free.fr/kursi/ido_course.pdf)

and here:

<https://web.archive.org/web/20081223091008/http://www.geocities.jp/hochfeld>

then follow the link at Elementary Lesson 0, or to the Appendices (31-36).

and a very similar one here (note the dates in the URLs):

<https://web.archive.org/web/20081215171122/http://www.geocities.jp/hochfeld>

then follow the link at Elementary Lesson 0, or to the Appendices (31-36).

It is difficult to tell which might be the latest version of 1.4. The first uses color and whitespace, and the second does not, but the second could simply be the result of a conversion to plain text. Focusing on content then, the second has extra information in the first paragraphs. The first refers to itself as "1.4 / 2000-??-??", whereas the second refers to itself as "1.4 / ... 2005-02-13". The first is the complete document up through Lesson 20, and the second has content for only Lesson 0 and the Appendices, but it does have (failing) links for Lessons 21-30.

## Authors

The authors are listed within this document as “Niklas ApGawain + P. D. Hugon + J. L. Moore + L. de Beaufront”, with the last three newly added to the author list.

Hugon, Moore, and Beaufront wrote during 1907-1923, and some of their works are listed in the document *Bibliografio di Ido 3ma ed 2020* [*Bibliography of Ido 3rd edition 2020*], at the link above. Whether they should be listed as authors or contributors is a question. Certainly from this author list we can conclude that this edition includes material written by them. However, without a copy of the 1975 book, there is no way to determine when their material began to enter the work.

## Revisers

This document says that it was "revised by an Idiotist (B.Y.T.)".

The document also says that workers beyond B.Y.T. included "Hans STUIFBERGEN, Frank KASPER, and Stephen L. RICE, a capable Logli [Loglanist]". Finally, at the end of Lesson 20 there is a credit to "Idisto and Idiotisto Bebson Y. Hochfeld".

## Licensing and Permissions

This appears in the third copy above:

*IDO FOR ALL*, by Niklas ApGawain + P. D. Hugon + J. L. Moore + L. de Beaufront, revised by an Idiotist (B.Y.T.) with material from various sources, *revizita/ata/ota da zeloza Idisti per materii de diversa fonti, ed fakte ja tradukita da li "tote libere" aden kelka sua lingui "segun sua maniero por sua skopi"*. [... from various sources, revised/being revised/to be revised by zealous Idists with material from various sources, and in fact already translated by them "completely freely" into some of their languages "according to their way for their purposes".]

Lo signifikas ke onu darfas tote libere uzar *Ido For All* por sua skopo segun sua maniero, tradukante la libro aden sua propra linguo pro ke olim Sro Niklas ApGawain per sua grand-anmo permissis me tale ke anke me volas kondutar



simile. [That means that one has the right to completely freely use *Ido For All* for their purpose according to their way, translating the book into their own language, because formerly Mr. Niklas ApGawain by his magnanimity permitted me *[to do so]*, so that I also want to behave similarly.]

This suggests that ApGawain gave permission to B.Y.T. to revise *Ido for All* (1975), and that B.Y.T. is giving permission to others to revise the sixth (1.4) edition.

Additionally, the Revisions section has:

1.0 / 1999-07-26

1.1 / 1999-08-03

1.2 / 2000-02-29

1.3 / 2000-05-10

1.4 / 2005-02-13

... / 20??-??-??

– da qui? *Forsan vu hike e vu  
ibe e vu qua esas lontane.* [by  
who? *Perhaps you here and  
you there and you who are  
(further away?).*]

So in regard to licensing, the last entry indicates that the reviser hoped for future revisers to change it.

### **Noteworthy Changes**

- Editions 1.0 - 1.4 saw the additions of Lessons 13-30, 6 Appendices, and an Afterword, and during this time perhaps Lesson 0 was added.
- The second copy of 1.4, cited above, says that a prior version (perhaps the first edition of 1975), serving as a primary source, was "revised ... with material from various sources". This is borne out by the following observations:
  - Lesson 0 has material from the chapter Preliminary Lesson on Pronunciation, *Complete Manual of the Auxiliary Language Ido* by Louis de Beaufront (1919).

- Lessons 1-18 have material sprinkled here and there from *Complete Manual*, Lessons I - X.
- Lessons 21-30 have material from *Complete Manual*, Lessons XI - XX.
- Presumably some material is from works by P. D. Hugon and J. L. Moore.
- Some of the Ido sample readings indicate the material was written in Italy and Germany.
- The text is in a fixed-width font, all of one size, thus the italics and bold, which possibly appeared in the 1975 edition and which definitely appeared in the source material by Beaufront, were all partially lost because of the limitations of plaintext. However, the formerly italicized words are at least double-quoted in the 1.4 edition.

For those interested, *Complete Manual of the Auxiliary Language Ido*, by Beaufront, 1919, is viewable on the ULI web site, <http://en.ido.li/wp-content/uploads/2015/10/Complete-Manual.pdf>, and is listed in the in the document *Bibliografio di Ido 3ma ed 2020* [*Bibliography of Ido 3rd edition 2020*], at [https://www.taziocarlevaro.ch/dds\\_ling\\_storici/B8%20Carlevaro%20et%20alii%20-%20Bibliografio%20di%20Ido%203ma%20ed%202020.pdf](https://www.taziocarlevaro.ch/dds_ling_storici/B8%20Carlevaro%20et%20alii%20-%20Bibliografio%20di%20Ido%203ma%20ed%202020.pdf).

## Seventh edition November 2008, "1.5"

Released 2008-11-11.

No copies of this document have been found. There is a reference to it in edition 1.6 (see below), where it is named "1.5 / 2008-11-11".

## Reviser

Since this is dated so closely to 1.6, the reviser is probably Jerry Muelver.

## **Eighth edition December 2008, "1.6"**

Released 2008-12-30.

Copies are at

<https://web.archive.org/web/20111125103925/http://idomondo.org/skolo.1.6.pdf>

and <https://www.yumpu.com/en/document/read/16381882/ido-for-all>.

### ***Reviser***

Jerry Muelver, for the North American Ido Society

### ***Licensing***

This edition is licensed as follows, quoting from edition 1.6:

This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 Unported License. To view a copy of this license, visit

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, 171 Second Street, Suite 300, San Francisco, California, 94105, USA.

You are free to copy, distribute and transmit the work, and to adapt the work under the following conditions:

- Attribution: You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author or licensor (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).
- Noncommercial: You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
- Share Alike: If you alter, transform, or build upon this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license to this one.

For any reuse or distribution, you must make clear to others the license terms of this work. The best way to do this is with a link to <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0/>

Any of the above conditions, including the restriction from use for commercial purposes, can be waived if you get permission from the

copyright holder. Nothing in this license impairs or restricts the authors' moral rights.

This edition also has the following statement:

The specific file format of Ido for All Edition 1.6 is Copyright © 2008 Jerry Muelver

### ***Noteworthy Changes***

- added Table of Contents
- extensively formatted the text, taking it from a fixed-width font to a proportional font, with larger font sizes for chapter and section headings, indents, whitespace, and tables for the vocabulary
- revised the Tips
- minor rewrites of text
- for the text (not in headings), retained the styling of Ido and English words from the prior version - no bold or italics, and sometimes the plaintext was double-quoted, other times not.
- added appendix *Letters*
- In this edition through the eleventh, the team of revisers of 1.4 is simply referred to as "under the guidance of Stephen L. Rice".

### **Ninth edition February 2010, "1.7"**

Released 2010-02-01.

No copies of this document have been found. There is a reference to it in the tenth (1.8) edition (see below), where it is named "1.7 / 2010-02-01".

### ***Reviser***

Jerry Muelver, for the North American Ido Society

## Tenth edition December 2010, "1.8"

Released 2010-12-01.

One copy is at

<https://web.archive.org/web/20110725112319/http://idomondo.org/skolo.1.8.pdf>.

A print copy is available at **Amazon**, at

<https://www.amazon.com/Ido-All-J-L-Moore/dp/B0093076J6>  
(spiral-bound).

Another is available at **Lulu**, at <https://www.lulu.com/shop/jl-moore-and-niklas-apgawain-and-pd-hugon-and-l-de-beaufront/ido-for-all/paperback/product-14006949.html> (spiral-bound).

### **Reviser**

Jerry Muelver, for the North American Ido Society

### **Licensing**

This edition is licensed with the same one used in the eighth (1.6) edition: the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 Unported License. The same explanatory text for the license appearing in 1.6 is included in 1.8 (see 1.6, above).

### **Noteworthy Changes**

- removed the page numbers from the front matter pages, including the table of contents
- centered the book title (left pages) / chapter title (right pages) located in the header of each page, changing from inner-aligned
- very few minor rewrites
- in Lesson 0, the alphabet letters are now bold
- in Lesson 28-29, changed the style of conjunctions and adverbs from capitals to lowercase bold.

- in appendix *Notes on Derivation*, changed `{{term}}` to *term*, for several terms
- this edition 1.8 was released as a *pdf* file
- this edition was also available on Barnes and Noble as an *ebook* for a while; the early pages were viewable, including the TOC, and that had the following changes that are not present in the 1.8 *pdf*:
  - the TOC was heavily reduced to major headings only
  - many font changes were made
  - all appendices, the Letters, and the Afterword were deleted

## Eleventh edition January 2011 (no version)

Released 2011-01.

A copy is at [http://www.crazyverse.com/ido/ido\\_for\\_all.pdf](http://www.crazyverse.com/ido/ido_for_all.pdf). This pdf, unlike most of the others, has text that is unsearchable, except for the initial page.

### **Reviser**

Gennaro Cappelluti

### **Licensing**

This edition is licensed with the same one used in the tenth (1.8) edition: the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 Unported License. Rather than giving the explanatory text, there is simply this statement:

Document license:

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/3.0>

### ***Noteworthy Changes***

- on the title page, combined authors and revisers into one list, added an Ido star, added introduction to Ido
- added a one-page book blurb
- removed the copyright page, including detailed description of Creative Commons license
- removed the Foreword from 1.4 (which had the list of editions), and Production and Publication Note for 1.8
- removed appendices *Unauthorized Names of countries, Letters*, and the *Afterword* from 1.4

Notably, this edition was clearly built on the 1.8 *pdf*, not the 1.8 *ebook* (see notes in 1.8 on these), because it retained the detailed table of contents, and the better fonts of the *pdf* (all of which were changed in the 1.8 *ebook*).

## **Twelfth edition April 2024**

Released 2024-04-23.

### ***Reviser***

Kim Kaiser

### ***Licensing***

This edition is licensed with the same one used in the eleventh edition: the Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 Unported License. Technically, the effort to produce the twelfth edition began with the .odt file of the eighth (1.6), and so the changes would be governed by *that* license, which is fortunately also CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

Additionally, Niklas ApGawain, author of the first edition, gave direct permission to Kim Kaiser to revise his work.

## Noteworthy Changes

This work began with the .odt (word processor) file for the eighth (1.6) edition, not that of the latest edition, January 2011, simply because the 1.6 .odt was available, while that of 1.8 and January 2011 were not.

- added an index, for readers of the print book
- changed Ido words and letters, when intermixed with English, from plain text (uppercase, lowercase, quoted) to bold lowercase. reason: this style helps the reader, and is used by many language books.
- added the appendix *Edition History*, to attempt to give credit where due to all the authors and revisers of the many editions, before that is lost
- brought the text of the 1.6 edition into sync with that of the January 2011 edition by visual comparison.
- changed the first two pages to a book-oriented look: a title page on one side and copyrights/licensing on the other. on the title page, split the authors into authors and revisers, as it used to be
- restored page numbers to the Contents and Preface pages (last appeared in 1.6), but now as Roman numerals instead of Arabic
- added the Prefaces to some prior editions
- changed English words referenced in the text from quoted to italics, the generally recommended style. one bonus is that in Lessons 21-30 this restores the italics of the source material, Lessons XI-XX of *Complete Manual of the Auxiliary Language Ido*, by Beaufront.
- changed "->" to "→"
- changed the 100+ uses of the slashed **esas/es** in example sentences to either **esas** or **es**. reason: it was distracting, and there are no such uses of **ilu/il**, **elu/el**, **ad/a**, **kad/ka**, **od/o**, **ed/e**.
- fixed numerous typos and spelling errors



- added consistency to the use of grammar terms
- in a very few cases, rewrote the text slightly
- removed Ido usages that were proposed but not generally adopted by Idists

---

Please report any errors or additional information about the edition history to [KirothimPub@gmail.com](mailto:KirothimPub@gmail.com).



## ***Index***

- accents.....4, 38, 70, 227
- adjectives.....14
  - comparison of.....82
  - derived from nouns.....17
  - indefinite.....188
  - interrogative.....102
  - object ending.....223
  - possessive.....79
  - reflexive.....37
  - short forms of.....20
- adverbial participles.....198
- adverbs.....43
  - comparison of.....83
  - derived from adjectives. .44
  - derived from prepositions  
.....205
  - list of.....218
- alphabet.....1
  - names of the letters.....5
- animals.....28
- arithmetic.....210
- articles.....
  - definite.....8
  - indefinite.....8, 177
  - making plurals with "le".23
- body, parts of.....77
- classes of roots.....230
- clothes.....64
- colors.....26
- commands.....26
- comparison.....184
  - of adjectives.....82
  - of adverbs.....83
- compound conjunctions....213
- compound words.....224, 227,  
248
- conditional mood.....80
- conjunctions.....
  - compound.....213
  - list of.....212
- countries.....95
- dates.....63
- days of the week.....89, 210
- demonstrative pronouns....109
- derivations.....16, 225, 230
  - adjectives from nouns....17
  - adverbs from adjectives. 44
  - adverbs from prepositions  
.....205
  - nouns from adjectives...16,  
232
  - nouns from verbs.....226
  - verbs from adjectives...232
  - verbs from nouns.....225 f.,  
231
- diphthongs.....3
- elision.....227
- ergative verbs.....211
  - and subjects.....211
- familiarity, forms for.....185
- family.....52
- foods.....34
- future active participles....118
- future passive participles...118
- future tense.....54
- gender.....30
- gender-specific words.....42
- house, things around the.....77
- imperatives.....26
  - clauses.....183
  - subjects of.....183
  - with infinitives.....214

- impersonal verbs.....102, 208, 225
  - and subjects.....208, 225
- indefinite adjectives.....188
- indefinite pronouns.....147
- indeterminate objects with "lo".....111
- indirect objects.....
  - with "-ari-".....142
  - without "to" or "for"....182
- infinitives...70, 185, 196, 201
  - clauses.....183
  - imperatives with.....214
  - with prepositions. .198, 208
- interrogative adjectives....102
- interrogative pronouns. 46, 65
- learning Ido, tips on.....6
- months.....62, 210
- mood.....
  - conditional.....80
- negative verbs.....16, 99
- nouns.....8
  - derived from adjectives 16, 232
  - derived from verbs.....226
  - object ending.....223
  - participles used as.....132
  - plural.....8, 23, 177
  - singular.....8
- numerals.....
  - cardinal.....56, 116
  - ordinal.....62, 117
  - punctuation of.....248
  - suffixes for.....248
- objects.....
  - grammatical ending 8, 130, 138, 223
  - indirect, with "-ari-".....142
  - indirect, without "to" or "for".....182
  - with "-aj-".....149
  - with "quan".....65, 92, 181
- objects of prepositions.....
  - grammatical ending.....8
- order of words.....223
- participles.....
  - adverbial.....198
  - future active.....118
  - future passive.....118
  - past active.....118
  - past passive.....118
  - present active.....118
  - present passive.....118
  - used as nouns.....132
- passive voice.....207
  - with "-esas".....131
- past active participles.....118
- past passive participles.....118
- past tense.....38
- perfect tense.....123
- personal pronouns.....36
- pet-names.....133
- plurals.....23, 177
  - of adjectives.....23
  - of nouns.....8
  - with "le".....23
- possession.....
  - for "whose", "of which".....182
  - with "di".....31, 176
  - with relative pronouns. .111
- possessive.....
  - adjectives.....79
- prepositions.....205
  - cannot be final.....204
  - list of.....202
  - prefixing to verbs.....206
  - with infinitives.....198, 208
- present active participles...118
- present passive participles.118

- present tense.....10
- principle.....
  - of reversibility.....231
  - of unasenceso.....230
- progressive verbs.....123
- pronouns.....
  - demonstrative.....109
  - indefinite.....147
  - indeterminate objects with "lo".....111
  - interrogative.....46, 65
  - object ending.....223
  - personal.....36
  - prefixing "il-", "el-", "ol-" to.....109
  - reflexive.....36
  - relative.....91, 102
  - relative, possession with .....111
  - short forms of.....79
- pronunciation.....1
  - accents.....4, 38, 70, 227
  - diphthongs.....3
  - syllables.....3
- punctuation.....
  - names of.....107
  - of numerals.....248
- quantities with "de".....32
- questions with "ka".....21
- reflexive adjectives.....37
- reflexive pronouns.....36
- relative pronouns.....91, 102
- reversibility principle.....231
- roots.....230
- roots, classes of.....230
- short forms.....
  - of "esas".....8
  - of adjectives.....20
  - of pronouns.....79
- subjects.....130, 138
  - and word order.....223
  - grammatical ending.....8
  - of imperatives.....183
  - of impersonal verbs...208, 225
  - with "-aj".....149
  - with "-ing".....200
  - with "qua".....181
  - with "there is".....209
  - with ergative verbs.....211
- suffixes.....
  - appear falsely to be.....216
  - for numerals.....248
  - list of.....237
- syllables.....3
- tenses.....
  - future.....54
  - one following another...193
  - past.....38
  - perfect.....123
  - present.....10
- time.....90, 100, 209
- tips on learning Ido.....6
- titles.....74, 227
- transport, forms of.....61
- unasenceso principle.....230
- verbs.....
  - commands.....26
  - conditional mood.....80
  - derived from adjectives 232
  - derived from nouns..225 f., 231
  - ergative.....211
  - future active participles 118
  - future passive participles .....118
  - future tense.....54
  - habitual actions.....193
  - imperative clauses.....183
  - imperatives.....26

- imperatives with infinitives .....214
- impersonal.....208, 225
- infinitives..38, 70, 196, 201
- negative.....16, 99
- passive voice.....207
- past active participles...118
- past passive participles. 118
- past tense.....38
- perfect tense.....123
- present active participles  
.....118
- present passive participles  
.....118
- present tense.....10
- progressive.....123
- questions with "ka".....21
- tenses, one following  
another.....193
- weather.....102
- word order.....223
- word-building with affixes..29
- "-aj-".....250
  - objects with.....149
- "-esas".....
  - passive voice with.....131
- "-ing", how to translate....197
- "-to", how to translate.....200
- "-ur-".....250
- "altra", "altru", "altro".....147
- "as", how to translate.....215
- "both", how to translate....221
- "but", how to translate.....220
- "can afford", how to translate  
.....193
- "dum".....49
- "ed"/"e".....10
- "esas".....
  - short form of.....8
- "ever", how to translate....220
- "irga", "irgu", "irgo".....147
- "it", how to translate 179, 195,  
208, 225
- "just", how to translate.....221
- "kelka", "kelko".....147
- "kom".....190, 215
- "le", making plurals with....23
- "may", how to translate....192
- "must", how to translate...193
- "nor".....216
- "nula", "nulu", "nulo".....148
- "od"/"o".....50
- "omna", "omnu", "omno"..147
- "quale".....190, 215
- "quan".....
  - objects with.....92, 181
- "shall", how to translate...191
- "should", how to translate. 191
- "singla".....148
- "that", how to translate.....181
- "ula", "ulu", "ulo".....147
- "una", "unu", "uni".....148
- "what", how to translate...187
- "whose", how to translate..182
- "will", how to translate.....191
- "would", how to translate..192



## ***Colophon***

**fonts:** Times New Roman for the text, Arial for the headings

**font sizes:**

- 12 point for the text
- 14 for section headings
- 16 for chapter headings
- 24 for the book title

**page size:** 6" x 9"

**margins:**

- inner:** 1.0"
- outer:** .5"
- top:** .38" (to header)
- bottom:** .5"

**header:**

- spacing:** .2" (between header and text)
- height:** .2" (header text)

## ***Obtaining a Print Book***

This PDF is ready to be uploaded to a book printing and binding service as the interior of a 6" x 9" paperback print book. A PDF for the cover would also be needed, and should be available at the same repository as this document. Since this document has no ISBN (and a PDF does not need one), the book service must be of the type that prints, binds, and ships a *private* copy; this book in its current form, without an ISBN, can not appear in an online bookstore. Also note that some online print services require the document to be uploaded by the owner of the copyright, which, for this work, would be the author or publisher (I do not know which) of the 1975 book. Revisers under Creative Commons licenses do not become owners of the copyright, to the best of my knowledge.